Welcome to Our Family!

Thank you for purchasing a quality built Grand Design recreational vehicle and choosing the RV lifestyle as a family friendly form of leisure, recreation and fun. It is the intent of the Grand Design RV Team and our Dealer Partners to do our absolute best to assure that you enjoy a positive ownership experience and capitalize on all the exciting opportunities this “Grand” lifestyle has to offer.

Your new Grand Design RV has been designed and built to our personal high standards as well as those of the Recreational Vehicle Industry Association. In addition, our products meet or exceed all applicable state and federal regulations, standards and requirements in order to assure your safety.

Please thoroughly read and understand the content of this Owner’s Manual and the various component manufacturer manuals that came with your RV. It is imperative for your personal safety that you become familiar with and learn how to properly operate the various systems, appliances and components included in your RV. Read all cautions, warnings and notices very carefully. Familiarize yourself and your family with the safety features built into your RV, and what actions and steps are necessary to assure safe camping. Always place the safety of you and your family first.

Please carefully read the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty that comes with your new RV. Be sure to understand the extent of your coverage and duration as well as the various exclusions and limitations that may apply. In addition, please understand the ongoing maintenance and upkeep requirements that need to be performed for your warranty to remain in effect. Failure to perform required maintenance could void your warranty. Your new RV may have additional warranties provided by the various component suppliers that extend beyond the Limited Base Warranty. Please be sure to read all component warranty information found in your Owner Information Package and submit any required registration forms.

Again, thank you from Grand Design RV and your Grand Design RV Dealer for your purchase. We wish you many safe and enjoyable journeys in your new RV and a lifetime of fond memories.
This page is intentionally blank.
# Fifth Wheel Owner’s Manual

## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Safety Defects</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service &amp; Warranty</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Design RV One Year Limited Base Warranty</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Design RV Three Year Limited Structural Warranty</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Supplier Contact Information</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Manufacturer Warranty Information</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant Safety</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Travel Information</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing &amp; Leveling</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONEControl® Touch Panel</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical Systems</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing Systems</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nautilus P4 Manual</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane System</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliances</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronics</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating &amp; Cooling</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout Systems</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Station</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Set Up the Patio Rail Kit</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Care</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Care</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required Maintenance Schedule</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Troubleshooting</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Record</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page is intentionally blank.
Introduction

About This Manual

The purpose of this manual is to serve as guide to normal operation, safety, care, and maintenance of your recreation vehicle (RV). The information in this manual is accurate at the time of publication but is subject to change without notice. Due to ongoing upgrades and improvements, some photographs, drawings, components, or systems described may not represent what is actually in your RV.

There is nothing in this manual that creates any warranty, express or implied. Information in this manual is not meant in any way to supplement, modify, or alter the terms and conditions of your Limited Base and Structural Warranties, or any component manufacturer warranties.

Procedures outlined in this guide are typical for normal operating conditions. You are responsible for the safe operation and use of your RV, and we have tried to include information to assist you. There are occasional tips to help you enjoy the recreational lifestyle; however, this guide is not intended to teach you how, or where, to camp.

If you have any questions, concerns, or require assistance regarding any aspect of your RV, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV

Contact Information:

Website: www.granddesignrv.com
Email: customerservice@granddesignrv.com
Phone: (574) 825-9679
Fax: (574) 825-9249
Address: Customer Service
Grand Design RV
11356 County Road 2
Middlebury, IN 46540
Introduction

Owner Information Package

The Owner Information Package contains the manual and registration cards for several individual components of your new Momentum Fifth Wheel (FW).

- It is critical that you register and activate each component warranty within the prescribed time limits to avoid loss of warranty coverage.
  - Some manufacturers require online registration through their company website.
  - See page 26, Component Supplier Contact Information.
- Some component manufacturers offer warranties beyond the Grand Design Limited Base and Structural Warranties.
- Other components are warranted separately and exclusively by the individual component manufacturer, and are therefore excluded from our Limited Base and Structural Warranties.
- BEFORE using your RV, it is important that you read and understand the information in this manual and your Owner Information Package.

Manufacturing Certification

All Grand Design RV fifth wheels and travel trailers are built to meet or exceed the thorough safety and manufacturing codes, standards, and regulations of the Recreational Vehicle Industry Association (RVIA).

- Both RVIA and Transport Canada conduct frequent random audits to confirm that our RVs are manufactured to U.S. (RVIA) and Canadian (CSA) standards.
- The RVIA or CSA Group label found on the sidewall next to the entry door certifies that your RV has been constructed to these exacting codes and standards.
- RVs built for sale in Canada may differ to conform to Canadian codes.

This NOTE symbol is used to identify special attention items, like useful tips, reminders or maintenance items.
Vehicle Identification Number

The unique 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) for your RV is stamped on a metal tag permanently attached to the Pin Box. It is also listed on the Federal Certification label.

A breakdown of a typical Grand Design RV VIN is shown in the example below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SAE World Identifier</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Number of Axles</th>
<th>Model Year</th>
<th>Plant Line</th>
<th>Sequential Build #</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>573</td>
<td>FM</td>
<td>3937</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>11000001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SAE World Identifier:**
573 — Grand Design RV

**Make / Model:**
M — Momentum
S — Solitude
R — Reflection
E — Imagine
T — Transcend

**Length:**
The number listed falls within a predetermined, specified grouping that does NOT indicate the actual measured length of your RV.

**Model Year:**
L — 2020
M — 2021
N — 2022
P — 2023
R — 2024

The last 8 digits of the VIN number are also the RV's serial number. For the example shown, the serial number is M1100001.
Safety Precautions

Nothing is more important than the personal safety of you, your family and others. Safety encompasses several areas related to the RV experience. This includes driving/towing safety, occupant safety, operational safety, environmental safety, and more. Any time you are dealing with carbon monoxide producing appliances, propane gas, electricity and other hazards it is critical that safety become your number one priority in and around your recreational vehicle.

The Safety Alert Symbol is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. It is imperative that you read, understand and abide by these safety alerts and messages to avoid possible personal injury or death.

- **DANGER** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

- **WARNING** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

- **CAUTION** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

Various safety and information labels are attached to surfaces both inside and outside your RV. These labels are permanent and should not be removed or relocated for any reason.
**NOTICE**

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury. This applies to hazardous situations involving property damage only.

### Additional Terminology Used

**[Customer Supplied]** This denotes aftermarket items not installed or included by Grand Design RV. Items noted as “customer supplied” are not covered by the Limited Base and Structural Warranties. The inclusion of items noted as “customer supplied” does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability, or inclusion for any specific unit.

**[If so equipped]** This denotes items that may be installed by Grand Design on particular RVs. Additionally, some items noted as “if so equipped” can only be included during the manufacturing phase and cannot be added at a later date. The inclusion of items noted as “if so equipped” does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability, or inclusion for any specific unit.

**[Optional]** This denotes items that may be an option on all or particular models. Additionally, some optional items can only be included during the manufacturing phase and cannot be added at a later date. The inclusion of optional items does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability or inclusion for any specific unit.
Reporting Safety Defects

In the United States

If you believe your vehicle has a defect, that could cause an accident, injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), and notifying Grand Design RV.

If the NHTSA receives similar complaints, they may open an investigation. If they determine that a safety defect exists in other vehicles, a recall and remedy campaign may be ordered. The NHTSA does not become involved in individual cases between you, your dealer, or Grand Design RV.

To contact the NHTSA,

Website: www.safercar.gov
Address: NHTSA Headquarters
Attn: Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue,SE
Washington DC  20590

Toll-free Vehicle Safety Hotline: 1-888-327-4236
TTY: 1-800-424-9153

Additional motor vehicle safety information is available online at www.safercar.gov

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect, which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada's Defect Investigations & Recalls Division, and Grand Design RV.

To contact Transport Canada,

Website: www.tc.gc.ca
Address: Transport Canada
Defect Investigations & Recalls Division
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa ON  K1A 0N5
Canada

Toll-free in Canada: 1-800-333-0510

If calling internationally,
or from the Gatineau-Ottawa area: 1-819-994-3328
Service & Warranty

Dealer’s Responsibilities

When you buy your new RV, at the time of purchase, your dealer is expected to:

1. **DELIVER your RV in the best condition possible.**
   Your RV must pass the dealer’s Pre-Delivery Inspection (PDI). This inspection tests all systems and components.

2. **PROVIDE an orientation to familiarize you with how to operate all systems and components of your new RV.**

3. **REVIEW with you, and explain the provisions of the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty.**

4. **SEND your completed Warranty Registration and New Vehicle PDI Check List to Grand Design RV.**  
   *Your registration form is required within 30 days of the delivery date to activate your warranty coverage.*

5. **ENSURE that you receive a complete Owner Information Package. Assist you with all component manufacturer warranty registrations (ie, locating the model and serial numbers of components as needed).**

6. **EXPLAIN how to obtain local and out-of-town service for your RV, and its (separately warranted) components, including repairs NOT under warranty.**

7. **SERVICE all Grand Design RV products.**

The Limited Base Warranty and the Limited Structural Warranty are activated only AFTER Grand Design RV receives a completed (signed & dated) warranty registration form from your dealer.
Owner’s Responsibilities

As the owner, you are responsible for the regular care and maintenance of your RV in accordance with this manual and the component manufacturer’s instructions.

- It is also your responsibility and obligation to return the RV to an authorized dealer for any warranty repairs and service that may be required.

- Proper maintenance will help avoid situations where the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty will not cover items due to neglect.

- Your dealer is responsible for proper service prior to delivery, and has a continued interest in your satisfaction.
  - We recommend warranty and maintenance services be performed by your Grand Design RV dealer.

- It is important to protect yourself and others with insurance coverage for your RV. Your insurance agent can assist you in obtaining the appropriate insurance coverage for personal liability, theft, collision, property damage, etc.
Obtaining Warranty Service

**Warranty service must be obtained:**
- WITHIN a reasonable time after the discovery of a defect, and
- BEFORE the applicable warranty period expires.

To help your dealer provide you the best level of service, please do the following:

**Call ahead**
It is best to have your service performed several weeks before you plan to use your RV. Your dealer may need some time to get you in their schedule. Most service departments are the busiest on Mondays, Fridays and before holidays.

**Be prepared**
Keep your warranty and service history paperwork available. Past repairs and maintenance records may help the service technician diagnose a current issue.

**Make a list**
Provide the dealer a prioritized list of all repairs needed. If you need your RV returned by a specific date, discuss this with the dealer’s service management. A second appointment may be required to complete lower priority list items or if parts need to be ordered.

**While waiting**
If possible, drop off your RV. Usually, customers cannot watch as repair work is performed. A shop’s insurance may even require that customers not be allowed in the service area.

**Inspect the work performed**
Inspect all repairs thoroughly. Notify the dealer’s service manager of any dissatisfaction right away.
- If you cannot immediately return your RV for repair, make an appointment to return as soon as possible.
- If a problem re-occurs after leaving the dealership, contact the dealer’s service manager and Grand Design RV Customer Support, to quickly resolve the issue.

Please have the following available when you call:
1. Your name, location and phone number where you can be reached
2. Your RV’s 17-digit VIN
3. Date of purchase
4. Contact information for the RV repair facility or dealer
5. Detailed description of the concern
6. If applicable, the component description, serial and model numbers

Promptly report any issue with an RV repair to the management where the work was done. All repair businesses require notification of problems within a specified time limit. Please familiarize yourself with the RV dealer or repair center’s policies.
Obtaining Emergency Warranty Repair

A roadside emergency can happen at any time, whether your RV is new or old. If you are traveling, using the following guidelines can help get you back on the road faster.

1. To find the nearest authorized repair center, use the Dealer Locator on our website www.granddesignrv.com.

2. If there is not an authorized dealer near your location, try the following to find a repair facility:
   - Ask the campground staff for referrals.
   - Check the local telephone yellow pages.
   - Contact your dealer, or
   - Grand Design RV Customer Support.

3. **When you find an authorized dealer or repair facility:**
   a. Call the RV repair facility to discuss your situation and make an appointment. Ask how their billing will be handled. They may choose to bill Grand Design RV directly; otherwise, you are expected to pay them.
   b. Have the RV repair facility inspect your RV. Either they or you must call Grand Design RV Customer Support to discuss applicable warranty coverage prior to any repair work being performed.
   c. Grand Design RV Customer Support will issue an authorization number upon warranty repair approval and advise if any original parts must be returned.
   d. Only after the authorization number has been issued, may the repair center begin work on your RV.
   e. For reimbursement, either you or the RV repair facility must send a copy of your itemized repair bill and all requested return parts to Grand Design RV by UPS (regular ground, freight pre-paid) within 60-days of the completed repair date.
      - To expedite processing your warranty claim, include your name, address, phone number, the RV’s 17-digit VIN, and your authorization number.
      - If returning parts, include a copy of your freight bill.
f. Inspect the completed repair work thoroughly. If you are not satisfied, communicate that to the RV repair facility management. Make sure you are satisfied with the repair before you pay or leave the premises.

**Obtaining emergency repair assistance on a weekend or after business hours**

If an authorized Grand Design RV dealer is not located nearby, contact your selling dealer for assistance. If your dealer is closed, check with the campground staff or telephone yellow pages for an RV repair facility. Have the item repaired and contact Grand Design RV Customer Support immediately the following business day.

**Replacement Parts**

Replacement warranty parts are only distributed by authorized Grand Design RV dealers or service centers. Grand Design RV does not sell parts *retail direct* or to *non-authorized* dealers. If an original part is no longer available, Grand Design RV or your dealer will try to provide an appropriate substitute.

**Aftermarket Installations & Alterations**

Aftermarket installations or alterations to the original equipment vehicle as distributed by Grand Design RV are not covered by the Limited Base and Structural Warranties. The special body company, assembler, equipment installer, or up-fitter is solely responsible for warranties on the body or equipment and any alterations (or any effect of the alterations) to any of the parts, components, systems, or assemblies installed by Grand Design RV. Grand Design RV is not responsible for the safety or quality of design features, materials, or workmanship of any alterations by such suppliers.
Updating Your Contact Information

Federal law requires that we keep a record of Grand Design RV owners. Please help us keep your contact information up to date, so that we can promptly contact you in the event of a recall or customer notification letter.

We request that you please notify us in writing, of address and ownership changes, or if your RV is stolen, totaled or destroyed.

To update your contact information,

Email: customerservice@granddesignrv.com

or Write: Grand Design RV
11356 County Road 2
Middlebury, IN 46540

If you have any questions, please contact Grand Design RV Customer Support at (574) 825-9679.
SUMMARY

What does this Warranty cover?

Grand Design RV, LLC (“Warrantor”) provides this One (1) Year (“Warranty Period”) Limited Base Warranty [which begins to run from the earlier of (i) the date of purchase by the original retail consumer purchaser or (ii) when the recreational vehicle is put into service] against certain defects in materials and/or workmanship for the recreational vehicle manufactured by, and workmanship provided directly by, Warrantor arising under normal use and service to the ORIGINAL RETAIL CONSUMER PURCHASER for the Warranty Period of the recreational vehicle. This Warranty only covers material components and parts of the recreational vehicle actually manufactured by and made by Warrantor and labor provided directly by Warrantor but no parts not made or manufactured by Warrantor. In addition to the forgoing and the other limitations and restrictions set for in this limited warranty, this limited warranty only covers a recreational vehicle sold by an authorized warrantor dealer to the original retail customer or its assign (transfer) to another retail purchaser within the warranty period, but only if the warranty for the recreational vehicle is registered in the original vehicle owner’s name within the thirty (30) day start date period set forth above.

THIS WARRANTY CONSTITUTES THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR ALL DEFECTS OF MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP. THIS WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ANY AND ALL OTHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES. THERE ARE NO OTHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES BEYOND THOSE SET FORTH HEREIN. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES WHICH EXTEND BEYOND THE DESCRIPTION ON THE FACE HEREOF. IN ADDITION TO THE EXCLUSIONS SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT APPLY TO DAMAGE DUE TO NEGLIGENT USE, MISUSE, ABUSE OR ACCIDENT INVOLVING ANY PART AND/OR ALL OF THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE, OR THE REPAIR OR ALTERATION OF SUCH RECREATIONAL VEHICLE. ANY REPAIR OR ALTERATION TO THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE SPECIFICALLY VOIDS THIS WARRANTY. ANY COMMERCIAL USE, RENTAL, OR BUSINESS USE OF THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE VOIDS THIS AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES PROVIDED BY WARRANTOR.

The sole remedy for a breach of the warranty is as follows. Defective parts and workmanship will be replaced by the Warrantor, or the Warrantor’s authorized agent, provided that the following terms are met:

1. The Warrantor’s authorized agent must be notified of the covered defect within the warranty period and within Twenty (20) days of when the defect was discovered or should have been discovered by a reasonable person exercising reasonable care according to the terms of this Limited Warranty.

2. The person seeking the replacement of the defective part or labor must be the original retail consumer purchaser, or an assignment to another consumer purchaser within the Warranty Period. Any assignment does not extend the Warrant Period.
3. The defective material or workmanship for which the warranty work and/or part is sought must be to the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE itself only.
4. The other terms and conditions of this Limited Warranty must be satisfied.

What types of things are excluded from the Warranty?

This Warranty does not cover:

a. Defects in any component parts or labor of the recreational vehicle which are not considered the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE or which were not manufactured by Warrantor;
b. Defects in any items or labor which are covered by a separate warranty from the original manufacturer of any part that is used by Warrantor in the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE;
c. Deterioration due to normal wear, tear, and exposure;
d. Repairs or replacements made necessary by negligence, negligent use of, misuse of, abuse of, loading the unit beyond its gross weight limitations, accidents, acts of God, modifications or alterations in or to the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE by anyone, and failure to maintain or care for the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE, and any and all matters which were not within the control of the Warrantor;
e. Neglect of the recreational vehicle or any part of it;
f. Repairs or replacements made necessary by reason of a failure of the original retail consumer purchaser or others to follow ordinary maintenance procedures as recommended by the Warrantor or the manufacturer or dealer of the recreational vehicle;
g. Any defect caused in-transit to or from a dealer or to or from the consumer or by the consumer or another;
h. Any defects in work, labor, materials or parts not actually manufactured by, performed by or made by Warrantor;
i. Tires; Batteries; Optional Generators and certain Appliances & Electronic Entertainment Equipment which is warranted separately by the respective component manufacturer.
j. Recreational vehicles purchased anywhere other than from an authorized Warrantor dealer;
k. Alterations, modifications or changes to the original design and build of the recreational vehicle;
l. Vehicles used for rental, business or disaster relief purposes;
m. Routine maintenance and adjustments;
n. Vehicles registered and used outside the U.S. and Canada;
o. Consequential/incidental expenses (damages) such as service calls, transportation, lodging, food, fuel, etc. NOTE: Some states do not allow the exclusion of incidental or consequential damages, so this exclusion may not apply to you;
p. Fading, yellowing or aging of exterior materials due to UV or sunlight or weather exposure;
q. Damage that has occurred as a result of misuse, abuse, neglect, or lack of maintenance;
r. Damage caused by unregulated water pressure, tank over-fill or plumbing system modifications resulting in flooding of the vehicle;
s. Damage caused by unprotected electrical hook-ups (home or campground), power surges, lightning, circuit overload or electrical system modifications;
t. Damage caused by overloading or improper weight distribution;
u. Damage caused by improper ventilation resulting in excessive condensation which results in water damage and/or mold or mildew;
v. Damage, fading or deterioration caused by prolonged exposure to natural elements;
w. Damage caused by infestation by insects or other animals;
x. Damage caused by the tow vehicle hitch, equalizer, stabilizer, electrical or brake controller system;
y. Damage caused by the environment or weather, including, but not limited to, flooding, high winds, acid rain, hail, lightning, high heat, extreme cold, etc.
z. Damage caused by road surface conditions, applications of salt or de-icing chemicals, gravel/sand, ruts, holes, etc.;

aa. Exterior paint or finish which is warranted independently by the paint manufacturer and/or independent applicator;
ab. DEFACING: scratches, dents, and rust on any surface of the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE; and
ac. EXCESS weight on the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE.

WARRANTOR'S OBLIGATIONS - HOW TO GET WARRANTY SERVICES

How Do You Get Service?

In no event shall repair or replacement for a defect be covered under this Warranty unless the repair or replacement occurs at Warrantor’s facilities, or Warrantor’s designated repair shop or dealer. Upon discovery of any defect covered by this Warranty, you must notify the authorized dealer from whom you purchased the recreational vehicle. Following notification, the recreational vehicle must be taken to the authorized dealer from whom you purchased it for inspection or another authorized dealer, if authorized by Warrantor, or authorized repair shop as directed by Warrantor. Either that dealer or repair shop or Warrantor will undertake appropriate corrective repairs in instances where the defect is covered by this Warranty. Warrantor reserves the right to use or cause the use of alternative parts or components having substantially equal or greater quality.

Warrantor will remedy defects in materials and workmanship covered under this Limited Warranty under normal use and service caused by Warrantor in the RECREATIONAL VEHICLE ONLY of the recreational vehicle. Warranty performance can only be obtained at Warrantor’s authorized dealers and service representatives. All costs incurred in transporting this recreational vehicle for warranty service shall be borne by purchaser unless otherwise approved in advance by Warrantor.
Service & Warranty

What are purchaser’s obligations?
The purchaser shall give notice to the Warrantor’s agent or dealer within Twenty (20) days after it is or should have been discovered, and any action to enforce it shall be commenced not more than three (3) months thereafter; otherwise the Purchaser will have waived any such defect and claim, and any and all damages arising as a result thereof. The purchaser must perform reasonable and necessary maintenance upon the recreational vehicle and use the recreational vehicle in accordance with the manufacturer of the recreational vehicles and Warrantor’s directions and recommendations. Among the other requirements under this Warranty, the Purchaser must also:

- Maintain the recreational vehicle in accordance with the maintenance requirements contained in the Owner’s Manual;
- Make minor adjustments including (but limited to) doors, drawers, latches, regulators, controls, mechanisms, etc. after 90 days of ownership;
- Maintain all exterior seals and sealant, which must be inspected every 3 months to assure there are no gaps or voids, and correcting as necessary; and
- Return their vehicle to an authorized dealer for repairs.

If you believe that you have a claim under this Warranty, locate and contact your nearest authorized Warrantor dealer to schedule an appointment. Be prepared to provide your vehicle serial number (VIN), date of purchase, and a description of the issue or concern. If you cannot locate a dealer, please go to the Warrantor’s web site or contact Warrantor directly for immediate assistance.

What are the Dealer’s Responsibilities?

- Perform a walk-through to assure that the customer understands the operation, use and safety requirements of the vehicle;
- Review vehicle warranties, operating manuals and instruction guides; and
- Inform the customer on how to obtain service, locally or while in transit;

Warrantor is not responsible or liable for any failures, breaches, negligence, inattention or problems on the part of the Dealer.

What events discharge Warrantor from the obligations under this Warranty?

Misuse or negligent use, abuse, or accident, neglect, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance including reasonable periodic inspections of the recreational vehicle and/or use of the recreational vehicle for rental, business or commercial use or any other use other than to use the recreational vehicle only for personal use, shall each discharge the Warrantor from any obligation under this Warranty. The recreational vehicle is designed for recreational and personal use.
What do I do to activate warranties of other manufacturers of component parts and goods?

COMPONENT WARRANTIES

As stated above, some components, accessories or equipment are not covered by this Base Limited Warranty. Examples include tires, batteries, optional generators, and some appliance & electronic entertainment equipment. However, those items may have coverage provided by the component manufacturer. These warranties are completely separate from this Limited Base Warranty, and in some cases may be longer and/or have specific coverage provisions and requirements. In order to activate these warranties you may have to complete registration forms, post cards or some other form of notification to the component manufacturer within a specific time period. These forms and documents will be located with the Owner’s Materials provided with your new vehicle. You must complete and submit them to the respective manufacturer as quickly as possible, and within the time periods required by those warranties.

DISCLAIMER OF CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES

What other conditions or limitations apply to this Warranty?

The original retail purchaser of the recreational vehicle and any person to whom the recreational vehicle is transferred or given or conveyed, and any person who is an intended or unintended user or beneficiary of this Limited Warranty, shall not be entitled to recover from Warrantor any consequential, punitive or incidental damages resulting from any defect in the recreational vehicle, or loss of use, time or revenues. This warranty also excludes costs of transportation to any authorized dealer or service representative or to the Warrantor to get warranty service, loss of use of the recreational vehicle, loss of time, loss of revenues, inconvenience, or other incidental or consequential damage and any punitive damages, with respect to business or property, whether as a result of breach of warranty, negligence, or otherwise.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation or the exclusion may not apply to you.

TO THE EXTENT NOT EXCLUDED IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, AN UNWRITTEN WARRANTY THAT THE PRODUCT IS FIT FOR ORDINARY USE, IS LIMITED TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY, AND ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTY ARISING BY OPERATION OF LAW ARE SPECIFICALLY LIMITED TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY TO THE EXTENT NOT ACTUALLY EXCLUDED IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

IF ANY MODEL OR SAMPLE IS SHOWN TO THE PURCHASER PRIOR TO THE PURCHASE OF THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE, SUCH SAMPLE OR MODEL WAS MERELY TO ILLUSTRATE A GENERAL TYPE OF QUALITY AND NOT TO REPRESENT THAT THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE WOULD NECESSARILY CONFORM TO A SAMPLE OR MODEL AND SHALL NOT BE DEEMED TO BE PART OF THE BASIS OF THE BARGAIN OR CREATE ANY EXPRESSED WARRANTIES OR AFFIRMATIONS OR PROMISES.
DISCLAIMER OF EXPRESSED AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES

THE WARRANTOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTIES.

THERE IS NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY MADE BY WARRANTOR BEYOND THAT CONTAINED IN THE LIMITED WARRANTY ABOVE. THE ABOVE REFERENCED LIMITED WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES. TO ACTIVATE THE LIMITED WARRANTY, THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE MUST BE REGISTERED WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF THE DATE OF PURCHASE; OTHERWISE, THIS LIMITED WARRANTY WILL NOT BE EFFECTIVE. NO PERSON HAS THE AUTHORITY TO ENLARGE, AMEND, OR MODIFY THIS WARRANTY.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

DESIGN CHANGES

Warrantor reserves the right to change the design of its RECREATIONAL VEHICLE from time to time without notice and without obligation to make corresponding changes in its products previously manufactured.

ATTORNEYS FEES

Any warranty claim asserted or brought in violation of this Limited Warranty, or any claim brought against WARRANTOR, directly or indirectly, under which the Purchaser or any other person or entity seeks to broaden the terms of the Limited Warranty or under which the Purchaser or any other person fails to successfully prevail on any issue or matter of any type or nature, shall entitle Warrantor to recover its costs, damages, and reasonable attorney’s fees in connection with the same.

How Does State Law Relate to This Warranty?

This Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

By registering or having your recreational vehicle registered in your name, or by asserting a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser (and all assigns) is agreeing on behalf of the purchaser and all assigns to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Limited Warranty.
Grand Design RV
THREE YEAR LIMITED STRUCTURAL WARRANTY

SUMMARY

What does this Warranty cover?

Grand Design RV, LLC (“Warrantor”) provides this Three (3) Year (“Warranty Period”) Limited Structural Warranty [which begins to run from the earlier of (i) the date of purchase by the original retail consumer purchaser or (ii) when the recreational vehicle is put into service] against certain defects in materials and/or workmanship for the structural components manufactured by, and workmanship provided directly by, Warrantor arising under normal use and service to the structural components (as defined below) for the above described recreational vehicle of Warrantors to the ORIGINAL RETAIL CONSUMER PURCHASER for the Warranty Period. This Warranty only covers material components and parts of the Structural Components actually manufactured by and made by Warrantor and labor provided directly by Warrantor. In addition to the forgoing and the other limitations and restrictions set for in this limited warranty, this limited warranty only covers a recreational vehicle sold to the original retail customer by an authorized warrantor dealer within the thirty (30) day start period set forth above. This Warranty is not assignable to any person or entity.

“Structural Components” consist of: materials and/or workmanship directly attributable to Warrantor, namely, the laminated fiberglass sidewall assembly, laminated fiberglass rear wall assembly, laminated fiberglass front wall (wrap), sidewall/end wall/front and rear wall frame assembly (wood and aluminum), roof assembly, floor assembly and frame assembly.

THIS WARRANTY CONSTITUTES THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR ALL DEFECTS OF MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP. THIS WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ANY AND ALL OTHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES. THERE ARE NO OTHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES BEYOND THOSE SET FORTH HEREIN. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES WHICH EXTEND BEYOND THE DESCRIPTION ON THE FACE HEREOF. IN ADDITION TO THE EXCLUSIONS SET FORTH IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT APPLY TO DAMAGE DUE TO NEGLIGENT USE, MISUSE, ABUSE OR ACCIDENT INVOLVING ANY PART AND/OR ALL OF THE STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS, OR THE REPAIR OR ALTERATION OF SUCH STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS. ANY REPAIR OR ALTERATION TO THE STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS SPECIFICALLY VOIDS THIS WARRANTY. ANY COMMERCIAL USE, RENTAL, OR BUSINESS USE OF THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE VOIDS THIS AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES PROVIDED BY WARRANTOR.

The sole remedy for a breach of the warranty is as follows. Defective parts and workmanship will be replaced by the Warrantor, or the Warrantor’s authorized agent, provided that the following terms are met:

1. The Warrantor’s authorized agent must be notified of the covered defect within the warranty period and within Twenty (20) days of when the defect was discovered or should have been discovered by a reasonable person exercising reasonable care according to the terms of this Limited Warranty.
2. The person seeking the replacement of the defective part or labor must be the original retail consumer purchaser. An assignment of the recreational vehicle to another person voids this Limited Warranty.

3. The defective material or workmanship for which the warranty work and/or part is sought must be to the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS only.

4. The other terms and conditions of this Limited Warranty must be satisfied.

**What types of things are excluded from the Warranty?**

**This Warranty does not cover:**

a. Defects in any component parts or labor of the recreational vehicle which are not considered the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS or which were not manufactured by Warrantor;

b. Defects in any items or labor which are covered by a separate warranty from the original manufacturer of any part that is used by Warrantor in the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS;

c. Deterioration due to normal wear, tear, and exposure;

d. Repairs or replacements made necessary by negligence, negligent use of, misuse of, abuse of, loading the unit beyond its gross weight limitations, accidents, acts of God, modifications or alterations in or to the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS by anyone, and failure to maintain or care for the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS, and any and all matters which were not within the control of the Warrantor;

e. Neglect of the recreational vehicle or STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS;

f. Repairs or replacements made necessary by reason of a failure of the original retail consumer purchaser or others to follow ordinary maintenance procedures as recommended by the Warrantor or the manufacturer or dealer of the Structural Components;

g. Any defect caused in-transit to or from a dealer or to or from the consumer or by the consumer or another;

h. Any defects in work, labor, materials or parts not actually manufactured by, performed by or made by Warrantor;

i. Front and rear fiberglass caps and any other cosmetic fiberglass attachments;

j. Sidewall metal (unless the root cause is the wall structure);

k. Exterior roof material (EPDM rubber, TPO, etc.);

l. Floor covering (carpet, linoleum, hardwood, tile, etc.);

m. All sidewall, end wall, front and rear wall, roof and floor attachments;

n. Delamination caused by water intrusion from lack of required exterior seal maintenance;

o. Vehicles purchased anywhere other than from an authorized Warrantor dealer;

p. Alterations, modifications or changes to the original design and build of the recreational vehicle;

q. Vehicles used for rental, business or disaster relief purposes;

r. Routine maintenance and adjustments;

s. Vehicles registered and used outside the U.S. and Canada;
t. Consequential/incidental expenses (damages) such as service calls, transportation, lodging, food, fuel, etc. NOTE: Some states do not allow the exclusion of incidental or consequential damages, so this exclusion may not apply to you;

u. Fading, yellowing or aging of exterior materials due to UV or sunlight or weather exposure;

v. Damage that has occurred as a result of misuse, abuse, neglect, or lack of maintenance;

w. Damage caused by unregulated water pressure, tank over-fill or plumbing system modifications resulting in flooding of the vehicle;

x. Damage caused by unprotected electrical hook-ups (home or campground), power surges, lightning, circuit overload or electrical system modifications;

y. Damage caused by overloading or improper weight distribution;

z. Damage caused by improper ventilation resulting in excessive condensation which results in water damage and/or mold or mildew;

aa. Damage, fading or deterioration caused by prolonged exposure to natural elements;

ab. Damage caused by infestation by insects or other animals;

ac. Damage caused by the tow vehicle hitch, equalizer, stabilizer, electrical or brake controller system;

ad. Damage caused by the environment or weather, including, but not limited to, flooding, high winds, acid rain, hail, lightning, high heat, extreme cold, etc.

ae. Damage caused by road surface conditions (gravel/sand, ruts, potholes, etc.); applications of salt or de-icing chemicals resulting in rust.

af. Exterior paint or finish which is warranted independently by the paint manufacturer and/or independent applicator;

ag. Defacing: scratches, dents, and rust on any surface of the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS; and

ah. Excess weight on the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.

WARRANTOR’S OBLIGATIONS - HOW TO GET WARRANTY SERVICES

How Do You Get Service?

In no event shall repair or replacement for a defect be covered under this Warranty unless the repair or replacement occurs at Warrantor’s facilities, or Warrantor’s designated repair shop or dealer. Upon discovery of any defect covered by this Warranty, you must notify the authorized dealer from whom you purchased the recreational vehicle. You must always notify the Warrantor as well even if you contact the dealer from whom you purchased the recreational vehicle. Following notification, the recreational vehicle must be taken to the authorized dealer from whom you purchased it for inspection or another authorized dealer, if authorized by Warrantor, or authorized repair shop as directed by Warrantor. Either that dealer or repair shop or Warrantor will undertake appropriate corrective repairs in instances where the defect is covered by this Warranty. However, no work may be performed to the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS without the prior authorization of the Warrantor. And, Warrantor reserves the right to use or cause the use of alternative parts or components having substantially equal or greater quality.
Warrantor will remedy defects in materials and workmanship covered under this Limited Warranty under normal use and service caused by Warrantor in the STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS ONLY of the recreational vehicle. Warranty performance can only be obtained at Warrantor’s authorized dealers and service representatives. All costs incurred in transporting this recreational vehicle for warranty service shall be borne by purchaser unless otherwise approved in advance by Warrantor.

What are purchaser’s obligations?

The purchaser shall give written notice to the Warrantor or an Authorized Dealer of any defect within Twenty (20) days after it is or should have been discovered, and any action to enforce it shall be commenced not more than three (3) months thereafter; otherwise the Purchaser will have waived any such defect and claim, and any and all damages arising as a result thereof. The purchaser must perform reasonable and necessary maintenance upon the recreational vehicle and STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS and use the recreational vehicle and STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS in accordance with the recreational vehicle manufacturer and Warrantor’s directions and recommendations. Among the other requirements under this Warranty, the Purchaser must also:

• Maintain the recreational vehicle in accordance with the maintenance requirements contained in the Owner’s Manual; and

• Maintain all exterior seals and sealant, which must be inspected every six (6) months to assure there are no gaps or voids, and all gaps and voids must be corrected as necessary. Documentation acceptable to Warrantor must be presented confirming completion of an annual sealant inspection by an authorized Warrantor dealer or authorized dealer repair shop for coverage consideration.

If you believe that you have a claim under this Warranty, locate and contact your nearest authorized Warrantor dealer to schedule an appointment. Be prepared to provide your vehicle serial number (VIN), date of purchase, and a description of the issue or concern. If you cannot locate a dealer, please go to the Warrantor’s web site or contact Warrantor directly for immediate assistance.

What events discharge Warrantor from the obligations under this Warranty?

Misuse or negligent use, abuse, or accident, neglect, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance including reasonable periodic inspections of the recreational vehicle and STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS and/or use of the recreational vehicle for rental, business or commercial use or any other use other than to use the recreational vehicle only for personal use, shall each discharge the Warrantor from any obligation under this Warranty. The Structural Components in the recreational vehicle are designed for recreational and personal use.
DISCLAIMER OF CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES

What other conditions or limitations apply to this Warranty?

The original retail purchaser of the recreational vehicle and any person to whom the recreational vehicle is transferred or given or conveyed, and any person who is an intended or unintended user or beneficiary of this Limited Warranty, shall not be entitled to recover from Warrantor any consequential, punitive or incidental damages resulting from any defect in the recreational vehicle, or loss of use, time or revenues. This warranty also excludes costs of transportation to any authorized dealer or service representative or to the Warrantor to get warranty service, loss of use of the recreational vehicle, loss of time, loss of revenues, inconvenience, or other incidental or consequential damage and any punitive damages, with respect to business or property, whether as a result of breach of warranty, negligence, or otherwise.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation or the exclusion may not apply to you.

TO THE EXTENT NOT EXCLUDED IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, AN UNWRITTEN WARRANTY THAT THE PRODUCT IS FIT FOR ORDINARY USE, IS LIMITED TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY, AND ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTY ARISING BY OPERATION OF LAW ARE SPECIFICALLY LIMITED TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY TO THE EXTENT NOT ACTUALLY EXCLUDED IN THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

IF ANY MODEL OR SAMPLE IS SHOWN TO THE PURCHASER PRIOR TO THE PURCHASE OF THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE/STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS, SUCH SAMPLE OR MODEL WAS MERELY TO ILLUSTRATE A GENERAL TYPE OF QUALITY AND NOT TO REPRESENT THAT THE RECREATIONAL VEHICLE/STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS WOULD NECESSARILY CONFORM TO A SAMPLE OR MODEL AND SHALL NOT BE DEEMED TO BE PART OF THE BASIS OF THE BARGAIN OR CREATE ANY EXPRESSED WARRANTIES OR AFFIRMATIONS OR PROMISES.

DISCLAIMER OF EXPRESSED AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES

THE WARRANTOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTIES.

THERE IS NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY MADE BY WARRANTOR BEYOND THAT CONTAINED IN THE LIMITED WARRANTY ABOVE. THE ABOVE REFERENCED LIMITED WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES. TO ACTIVATE THE LIMITED WARRANTY, YOU MUST RETURN THE ATTACHED NOTICE TO WARRANTOR WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF THE DATE OF PURCHASE; OTHERWISE, THIS LIMITED WARRANTY WILL NOT BE EFFECTIVE. NO PERSON HAS THE AUTHORITY TO ENLARGE, AMEND, OR MODIFY THIS WARRANTY

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitations may not apply to you.
DESIGN CHANGES

Warrantor reserves the right to change the design of its STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS from time to time without notice and without obligation to make corresponding changes in its products previously manufactured.

ATTORNEYS FEES

Any warranty claim asserted or brought in violation of this Limited Warranty, or any claim brought against WARRANTOR, directly or indirectly, under which the Purchaser or any other person or entity seeks to broaden the terms of the Limited Warranty or under which the Purchaser or any other person fails to successfully prevail on any issue or matter of any type or nature, shall entitle Warrantor to recover its costs, damages, and reasonable attorney’s fees in connection with the same.

How Does State Law Relate to This Warranty?

This Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

What to do if a separately manufactured part is defective?

Our warranty does not cover defects in separately manufactured products which are not produced or manufactured directly by Warrantor. These products may be warranted by their individual manufacturers. To the extent that such products installed in your recreational vehicle or STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS are covered by warranties from those manufacturers, the written warranties by the suppliers of those products may be provided with each new recreational vehicle for the convenience and clarification of the original retail consumer purchaser. If you have trouble locating the manufacturer supplying these warranties, your dealer will be glad to assist you. However, we have no responsibility or control over the outcome of warranty claims against these manufacturers.

How Does State Law Relate to This Warranty?

This Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

By registering, or having your recreational vehicle registered in your name, or by asserting a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser (and all assigns) is agreeing on behalf of Purchaser and all assigns to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Limited Warranty.
This page is intentionally blank.
Service & Warranty

**Component Supplier Contact Information**

All component suppliers listed are correct at the time of printing. Grand Design RV may change components at their discretion. Please contact GDRV Customer Support with any questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Brand</th>
<th>Supplier Website</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner w/Heat Pump</td>
<td>Coleman</td>
<td>airxcel.com</td>
<td>(423) 775-2131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner</td>
<td>Coleman</td>
<td>airxcel.com</td>
<td>(423) 775-2131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Transfer Switch</td>
<td>TRC</td>
<td>rvpower.southwire.com</td>
<td>(800) 780-4324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awnings</td>
<td>Carefree of Colorado</td>
<td>carefreeofcolorado.com</td>
<td>(800) 622-3230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awning Slide Toppers</td>
<td>Carefree of Colorado</td>
<td>carefreeofcolorado.com</td>
<td>(800) 622-3230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axles</td>
<td>Dexter</td>
<td>dexteraxle.com</td>
<td>(574) 295-7888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage Doors</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bed-Lift System</td>
<td>Happijac</td>
<td>happijac.com</td>
<td>(801) 544-2585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combo CO/ LP Alarm</td>
<td>MTI Industries</td>
<td>mtiindustries.com</td>
<td>(800) 383-0269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converter - 55 Amp</td>
<td>WFCO (Cheng)</td>
<td>wfcoelectronics.com</td>
<td>(877) 294-8997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Doors</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Steps</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>morryde.com</td>
<td>(574) 293-1581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Steps</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireplace - 36”</td>
<td>Titan WF-36S</td>
<td>davecarter.com</td>
<td>(574) 642-0627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireplace - 48”</td>
<td>Innoflame</td>
<td>davecarter.com</td>
<td>(574) 642-0627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Pump</td>
<td>ECI Fuel Systems</td>
<td>collins-n-co.com</td>
<td>(574) 848-1118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank</td>
<td>ECI Fuel Systems</td>
<td>collins-n-co.com</td>
<td>(574) 848-1118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furnace</td>
<td>Suburban</td>
<td>airxcel.com</td>
<td>(423) 775-2131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator - Gasoline</td>
<td>Onan</td>
<td>power.cummins.com</td>
<td>(800) 888–6626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graphics</td>
<td>BGS</td>
<td>burlingtongraphics.com</td>
<td>(262) 554-8808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverter</td>
<td>Sensata / Magnum-Dimensions</td>
<td>sensata.com</td>
<td>(574) 262-3688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>futuresalesrv.com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leveling System</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Center</td>
<td>WFCO (Cheng)</td>
<td>wfcoelectronics.com</td>
<td>(877) 294-8997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattress(es)</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microwave - Standard</td>
<td>Furrion</td>
<td>furrion.com</td>
<td>(888) 354-5792</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microwave - Convection</td>
<td>Furrion</td>
<td>furrion.com</td>
<td>(888) 354-5792</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONEControl® Touch Panel</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>Brand</td>
<td>Supplier Website</td>
<td>Phone Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patio Rail Kit</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin Box</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>morryde.com</td>
<td>(574) 293-1581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin Box</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp Door</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp Door Steps</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>morryde.com</td>
<td>(574) 293-1581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range Top/Oven Combo</td>
<td>Insignia</td>
<td>patrickind.com/</td>
<td>(574) 361-9787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator</td>
<td>Norcold</td>
<td>thetford.com</td>
<td>(800) 543-1219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof Membrane</td>
<td>Alpha Systems</td>
<td>alphasystemsinc.com</td>
<td>(800) 462-4698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof Vent</td>
<td>Maxxfan</td>
<td>airxcel.com</td>
<td>(423) 775-2131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout System - Hydraulic</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout System - Electric Through Frame</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide Floor / Garage Floor</td>
<td>Huber</td>
<td>huberwood.com</td>
<td>(800) 933-9220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar Prep / Solar System</td>
<td>Jaboni Power Products</td>
<td>futuresalesrv.com</td>
<td>(574) 262-3688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speakers (Premium)</td>
<td>Rockford Fosgate</td>
<td>teamprogressive.com</td>
<td>(616) 878-3500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereo (Premium)</td>
<td>Rockford Fosgate</td>
<td>teamprogressive.com</td>
<td>(616) 878-3500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension System</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>morryde.com</td>
<td>(574) 293-1581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Televisions</td>
<td>TCL</td>
<td>tclusa.com</td>
<td>(877) 300-8837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theater Seating</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires</td>
<td>Cooper / West Lake</td>
<td>lionsheadtireandwheel.com</td>
<td>(574) 533-6169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet</td>
<td>Thetford</td>
<td>thetford.com</td>
<td>(800) 543-1219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Antenna</td>
<td>Winegard Company</td>
<td>winegard.com</td>
<td>(800) 288-8094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
<td>Suburban</td>
<td>airxcel.com</td>
<td>(423) 775-2131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Pump</td>
<td>Shurflo</td>
<td>shurflo.com</td>
<td>(800) 854-3218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>lci1.com</td>
<td>(574) 537-8900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Component Manufacturer Warranty Information

Each manufacturer provides their own warranty for the components on your Momentum FW. This warranty information is current at the time printing, but is subject to change at any time per the manufacturer. Details can be found on the company websites listed or by contacting them directly. See page 26, Component Supplier Contact Information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Brand</th>
<th>Manufacturer Warranty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner w/Heat Pump</td>
<td>Coleman</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner</td>
<td>Coleman</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Transfer Switch</td>
<td>TRC</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awnings / Awning Slide Toppers</td>
<td>Carefree of Colorado</td>
<td>One year limited warranty Parts, Labor and Standard Freight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axles</td>
<td>Dexter Axle</td>
<td>Five year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage Doors</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bed-Lift System</td>
<td>Happijac</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combo CO / LP Alarm</td>
<td>MTI Industries</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converter - 55 Amp</td>
<td>WFCO</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Doors</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Steps</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Steps</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireplace - 36&quot;</td>
<td>Titan WF-36S</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireplace - 48&quot;</td>
<td>Innoflame</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Pump</td>
<td>ECI Fuel Systems</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank</td>
<td>ECI Fuel Systems</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furnace</td>
<td>Suburban</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator - Gas</td>
<td>Onan</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graphics</td>
<td>BGS</td>
<td>Five year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverter</td>
<td>Sensata / Magnum-Dimensions</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leveling System</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Center</td>
<td>WFCO</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattress(es)</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microwave - Standard</td>
<td>Furrion</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microwave - Convection</td>
<td>Furrion</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONEControl® Touch Panel</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>Brand</td>
<td>Manufacturer Warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patio Rail Kit</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin Box</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin Box</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp Door</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp Door Steps</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range Top/Oven Combo</td>
<td>Insignia</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator</td>
<td>Norcold</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof Membrane</td>
<td>Alpha Systems</td>
<td>Eighteen year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof Vent</td>
<td>Maxxfan</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout System - Hydraulic</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout System - Electric Through Frame</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide Floor / Garage Floor</td>
<td>Huber</td>
<td>25-year limited warranty, not to exceed the OEM Warranty on finished product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar Prep / Solar System</td>
<td>Jaboni Power Products</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speakers (Premium)</td>
<td>Rockford Fosgate</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereo (Premium)</td>
<td>Rockford Fosgate</td>
<td>Two year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension System</td>
<td>MORryde</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Televisions</td>
<td>TCL</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theater Seating</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires</td>
<td>Cooper / West Lake</td>
<td>No fault 12-month limited warranty from the date of purchase. Five year limited warranty from the tire manufacture date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet</td>
<td>Thetford</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Antenna</td>
<td>Winegard Company</td>
<td>Five year limited warranty, Parts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
<td>Suburban</td>
<td>One year limited warranty, Labor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Pump</td>
<td>Shurflo</td>
<td>One year limited warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>Lippert Components</td>
<td>One year limited warranty from date of purchase.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Blue shading indicates warranty is for the Original Owner ONLY
Occupant Safety

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is designed with comfort and safety as a priority. This RV meets or exceeds the safety standards and applicable codes in effect at the time it is built. All required safety items are carefully installed to protect you and the occupants of your RV.

Family Safety Plan

Develop a Family Safety Plan to use in case of an emergency or severe weather condition. Practice it with your entire family, especially children.

• Before camping, please review and understand the locations of all doors, emergency exit windows, and safety equipment inside your RV.

• Teach everyone what the RV safety alarm signals mean and how to be prepared to leave the RV, by themselves if necessary.

• Draw a floor plan of your RV and find two ways to exit. There should be at least one way to get out of your RV without opening the door.

• Teach everyone how to check doors (and to not open them if they are hot). Also teach everyone to stay low to try to avoid breathing smoke, fumes or gases.

• Decide on a meeting place a safe distance from your RV. Make sure everyone understands to gather and wait there, in case family members are separated from one another in an emergency.

• Make sure everyone knows where to go to call the fire department or 911 from outside the RV.

• Conduct safety drills at least every six months.
  ◦ Make sure everyone, guests included, knows how to evacuate the RV safely.

• Practice exiting the RV blindfolded; in a real fire situation, thick black smoke can make it impossible to see.

• Ask an out-of-state relative or friend to serve as your family contact. Make sure everyone knows the contact person’s name, address, phone number and email.

For additional safety precautions, Consult your local fire dept.
Pet Safety

Emergency shelters could refuse to admit pets due to health or space reasons. The survival of a beloved pet often depends on the careful plans their owner has made in advance.

- Prepare an emergency plan for pets that includes a 3-day supply (at least) of dry food and fresh water.

Emergency Weather Planning

Severe weather is one of the more serious conditions to take into account when camping. Weather can change with little or even no warning. Thunderstorms, hail, flooding, hurricanes, tornadoes, earthquakes, etc. can threaten your safety and damage your tow vehicle or RV.

Local radio and TV stations normally broadcast weather conditions and warnings as they occur. Research other methods of learning about severe weather conditions and how to deal with them. You may want to consider investing in a weather radio. Weather radios offer 24 hour-a-day VHF broadcasts of weather observations and forecasts directly from the US National Weather Service (NWS).

The frequencies used by the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) weather radio stations are 162.400, 162.425, 162.450, 162.475, 162.500, 162.525, or 162.550 megahertz or visit their website www.noaa.gov.

Repairing severe weather damage

If your RV (or tow vehicle) is damaged due to severe weather:

- Call your insurance company as soon as possible to report your claim, BEFORE scheduling any repair work.

Please familiarize yourself with the following weather terms:

**Warning** - indicates that a particular weather hazard is either imminent or has been reported.

Move to a safe location immediately. Take action to protect life and property. The type of hazard is named in the type of warning (tornado warning, blizzard warning, etc.).

**Watch** - indicates that a particular weather hazard is possible and that conditions are favorable for its occurrence.

A watch is a time for preparation, planning, and increased awareness. Stay alert for changing weather, listen for further information and think about what to do if the danger materializes.
Fire Safety

Please AVOID the three (3) most common Fire Safety issues:

Using Flammable Solvents/Cleaning Fluids,
Leaving Children Unattended, and Smoking In Bed.

• In a fire emergency, EVACUATE the RV first, then call 911 from a safe location.

• In a fire emergency, execute your Family Safety Plan.

• Make sure everyone knows to Stop, Drop & Roll if their clothes catch fire.
  ◦ Stop in place, do not run.
  ◦ Drop to the ground.
  ◦ Roll back and forth, with hands shielding face from the fire.

• Supervise children around any open flame, especially grills, and campfires.

• Learn and teach safe fire practices. Build campfires away from nearby trees or bushes.

• Maintain at least a three-foot clear area around grills, campfires and tents, that is free of leaves, dry grass, pine needles, etc.

• ALWAYS have a way to quickly and completely extinguish a campfire ready in advance. NEVER leave a fire burning unattended, even a cigarette.

• Teach family members how to use the fire extinguisher and replace it as recommended.

• DO NOT store combustible materials in closed areas or near a heat source.

• DO NOT use water to put out a grease fire. Water can spread some types of fire and create an electrocution hazard during an electrical fire.

• ALWAYS call the Fire Department, No matter how small the fire.

More information on firefighting can be found at the National Fire Protection Association website (www.nfpa.org).
Occupant Safety

Fire Extinguisher

A fire can spread very fast. BEFORE using the fire extinguisher, remember that **safe escape** is the most important part of any fire response plan. **If there is a fire in or around your RV:**

- **EVACUATING all occupants from the RV safely, must be your number one ( #1) priority.**

A dry chemical, Class B /Class C type fire extinguisher is located near the entry door of your RV. The portable fire extinguisher can be used to put out small fires or contain one until the fire department arrives. Portable extinguishers do have limitations.

*Household fire extinguishers are classified into four types by Underwriters Laboratories (UL):*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Intended Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type A</td>
<td>For use on fires involving combustible materials such as wood, cloth and paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type B</td>
<td>For use on flammable liquid fires, including kitchen grease. <em>NEVER use water on this type of fire.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type C</td>
<td>For use on fires involving energized electrical equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type ABC</td>
<td>Works on all three types of fires listed above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operation**

When you use the fire extinguisher, ALWAYS keep your back to a clear exit for an easy escape. Leave *immediately* if the fire cannot be controlled or the room fills with smoke.

There are different types and sizes of fire extinguishers, but for the most part, all of them work the same.

*To operate a fire extinguisher, remember the word: P.A.S.S.*

**PULL** the pin. Hold the extinguisher with the nozzle pointing away from you, and release the locking mechanism.

**AIM** low. Point the extinguisher at the base of the fire.

**SQUEEZE** the lever slowly and evenly.

**SWEEP** the nozzle from side-to-side until the fire is out.

Avoid inhaling the dry chemical agent in the fire extinguisher. It is not toxic but it may cause skin irritation. In case of contact, flush the affected area with clean, cool water. If irritations persists, contact a physician immediately.
Disposal
Please check the local laws BEFORE disposing of your used (non-refillable) dry chemical fire extinguisher. Contact your local fire, sanitation or environmental protection department for rules on disposal.

Emergency Egress Window
The *Emergency Egress Window (or exit window)* is your secondary exit, if the RV’s entrance door becomes blocked or unavailable. All egress windows are marked with an *EXIT* label (right) and have red handles or levers. Depending upon the window type, an egress window may be a large section or an entire window. Learn and practice how to open and operate the egress window before an emergency occurs:

- When pulling into your campsite, make sure the egress windows are not blocked by trees or other obstacles.
- Also check that below each egress window the ground is solid and the escape path is clear.
- Review the egress window locations and how to operate them with all people staying in the RV.
- Plan escape routes from the front and rear of the RV.
- Decide who will exit through the emergency escape windows first, and in what position.
- Place a blanket or heavy coat over the window frame to cushion the exit.
- If there is a fire, the last person to exit the RV should be prepared to assist those in front.
- Arrange for a meeting place safely away from the RV.

Maintenance
- To prevent the seals from sticking, OPEN and CLOSE your *Emergency Egress Window(s)* each trip.
- During transit the *Egress Window(s) must* be locked.
**Smoke Alarm**

The smoke alarm is located on the ceiling in the main living area of your RV. It is intended to help reduce injury or loss of life in a fire. Proper use can give you time to escape, but they are not foolproof. Smoke alarms only sound when smoke reaches them.

- Smoke alarms **MUST** be properly located, installed, and maintained.
- **Individuals with hearing loss or certain medical problems should consider using warning devices that provide both audible and visual signals**

**Operation**

- Check that a 9-volt battery is correctly connected.
- When the battery is supplying power, the red LED will flash.
- *If smoke is detected by the sensor*, a loud alarm will sound until the air is cleared.

**If the smoke alarm sounds**

During an alarm, you will hear a loud, repeating horn pattern and the red LED will flash rapidly.

- The alarm warns you of a potentially dangerous situation that **requires your immediate attention**.
- **NEVER ignore any alarm**. Ignoring the alarm may result in injury or death.
- **EVACUATE** the RV first, *then*
- **Call** 911 from a safe location.

**How to test**

TEST the smoke alarm at least once EVERY WEEK to make sure that it is working properly. Stand at arm’s length from the alarm when testing. **The alarm horn is loud and may be harmful to your hearing.**

1. **PRESS and HOLD** the *TEST/SILENCE* button on the smoke alarm cover until the alarm sounds. The alarm may continue for a few seconds after you release the button.
2. If the alarm does not sound, check that it is receiving power, *then* TEST it again.
3. **CHECK** that the CO Alarm is clean and dust-free.
4. *If it still does not alarm*, REPLACE it immediately.
Battery
The smoke alarm will NOT function if the battery is:
• Missing, Disconnected, or Dead.
• Installed incorrectly
• The wrong type.

REPLACE the 9-volt battery in your Smoke Alarm when it chirps (the low battery warning). NEVER disconnect the battery to silence the smoke alarm.

• When the low battery warning sounds, the battery MUST be replaced to continue your protection.

Maintenance
• DO NOT clean with water, solvents, cleaning agents, bleach, or polish as these may damage the alarm.
• VACUUM the Smoke Alarm cover at least once a month.
• DO NOT paint over the unit. Paint may clog the openings to the sensing chambers and prevent it from operating properly.

Carbon Monoxide (CO)
Carbon monoxide (CO) is an insidious poison. It is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas. It can endanger lives even at low levels of concentration. Many cases of reported carbon monoxide poisoning indicate while victims are aware they are not well, they become so disoriented they are unable to save themselves by either exiting or calling for assistance. Young children and household pets may be the first affected.

CO gas is produced when any type of fuel is incompletely burned. Potential sources of CO in and around your RV can include gas or diesel engine exhaust, portable space heaters, gas stoves and ovens, furnaces, defective engine exhaust systems, portable grills, other nearby RVs, portable generators, generator exhaust, and other propane-powered appliances.

CARBON MONOXIDE (CO) POISONING may cause the following symptoms:
It is important to discuss these symptoms with ALL household members and RV guests.

• Mild exposure: Headaches, running nose, sore or watery eyes, often described as flu-like symptoms.
• Medium exposure: Dizziness, drowsiness, vomiting.
• Extreme exposure: Unconsciousness, brain damage and death.
Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane Gas (LP) Alarm

The combination alarm contains two independent, self-cleaning electronic sensors designed to sense the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) and propane gas. When the LED on the front glows green, the alarm is active.

The gas sensor may also detect other combustible fumes or vapors including; acetone, alcohol, butane and gasoline. These chemicals can be found in common items such as deodorant, cologne, perfume, wine, liquor, adhesive, lacquer, kerosene, most cleaning agents and the propellants of aerosol cans.

High temperatures can activate glue and adhesive vapors. If your RV is closed on a hot day, the chemicals used in its construction may be detected, even months after the vehicle was built.


Combination Alarm Operation

To be operational, the combination alarm MUST have power supplied by the RV’s 12-volt electrical system. The alarm will operate normally down to 7-volts DC. DO NOT allow the auxiliary battery to fall below 7-volts DC.

- Simultaneous CO and Propane Alarms - If both CO and propane gas are detected at the same time:
  - The combination alarm will give higher priority to the propane alert. A gas explosion is the more immediate potential danger.
  - The propane LED will flash red and the beep will sound. The CO LED will remain a steady red until the RV is ventilated.

- The CO sensor requires a ten (10) minute initial warm-up period to clean the sensor and achieve stabilization.
  - The warm-up period is indicated by the CO LED blinking green. During the warm-up period the unit cannot go into a CO alarm.
  - After the warm-up period, the green LED should glow continuously. If the LED is not lit please refer to the troubleshooting section, and contact your dealer for assistance.


- The Propane Gas sensor has an approximately one (1) minute warm-up period. After 1 minute the alarm can detect explosive gas. **During the warm-up period the unit cannot go into a propane gas alarm.**
- **DO NOT** attempt to fix the combination alarm yourself.

The combination alarm has two indicator lights that display a specific color for each monitored condition. There also is a matching sound pattern for alarm conditions.

- **PROPANE GAS ALARM:** If a dangerous level of propane or methane gas is detected, the red LED will flash and the alarm will sound a steady tone. The alert will continue until the **TEST/MUTE** button on the front of alarm is pressed.
**IMMEDIATE ACTION IS REQUIRED**
See page 41: Procedures to Take During an LP Gas Alarm.

Ventilate the RV. The red gas LED will continue to flash until the gas has cleared, or the gas alarm will reactivate in approximately five (5) minutes if the gas is still present. **DO NOT RE-ENTER THE RV.** The alarm will return to normal operation after the RV has properly ventilated.

- **CO ALARM:** If the CO level is over 35 ppm, the red CO LED will flash and the alarm will sound four (4) “beeps” then silent for five (5) seconds. This cycle will continue until the **TEST/MUTE** button on the front of alarm is pressed.
**IMMEDIATE ACTION IS REQUIRED.**
See page 42: Procedures To Take During a CO Alarm.

Ventilate the RV. The red light will stay on until the CO has cleared, or the alarm will re-activate in approximately six (6) minutes if the CO is still present. **DO NOT RE-ENTER THE RV.** The alarm will return to normal operation after the RV has properly ventilated.

- **MALFUNCTION/SERVICE SIGNAL:** If any malfunction is detected, the gas LED will remain off and the Operational / CO LED will alternate red/green and the alarm will sound once every fifteen (15) seconds. Press the **TEST/MUTE** button. If the **TEST/MUTE** button does not clear the signals, check the auxiliary battery voltage. If the auxiliary battery voltage is not low and the combination alarm will not return to normal operation, immediately remove the alarm and return for service or warranty replacement.

**WARNING**

This alarm is designed to detect Carbon Monoxide (CO) and Propane (LP) Gas. The alarm is **NOT** designed to detect smoke or fire.

**WARNING**

Actuation of this device indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) or propane (LP) gases which can **KILL YOU.**

**WARNING**

- When the alarm is first turned on, it cannot detect propane or sound a warning for two minutes.
- The propane leak alarm is not a smoke or fire alarm.
- The alarm will only indicate the presence of propane gas at the sensor.
- Explosive gas may be present in other areas.

**CAUTION**

If the combination alarm activates due to carbon monoxide or propane, **DO NOT re-enter the RV until the problem is corrected.** Contact your dealer for assistance.
Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm, Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Audible Signal</th>
<th>Visual Signal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Steady Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO Alarm</td>
<td>4 &quot;Beeps&quot;, 5 Seconds Off</td>
<td>Steady Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane Alarm</td>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>Flashing Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm Malfunction</td>
<td>&quot;Beep&quot; Every 30 Seconds</td>
<td>Alternating Red/Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of Life</td>
<td>&quot;Beep&quot; Every 25-30 Seconds</td>
<td>Flashing Red-Red, Green-Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm Up Cycle (About 10 Minutes)</td>
<td>No Sound</td>
<td>Flashing Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test Procedure

To reduce the risk of CO poisoning or propane gas explosion, test the combination alarm operation after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

• The TEST/MUTE button tests all electrical functions of the alarm.

• It does NOT check the sensor operation.

You may use propane or butane gas to TEST the gas sensor:

• To test the CO sensor use a can of SAFE-T-ALERT CO test gas to test the 400 ppm calibration point.

• DO NOT try to generate CO to test the alarm.

**NOTE:** It may take up to ten (10) seconds for the alarm to sound.

The alarm may be tested at any time. PRESS and HOLD the TEST/MUTE button (located on the front of the alarm) for one (1) second. The alarm is working properly if the GREEN indicator light changes color to RED and the horn beeps four (4) times. The propane Gas LED should also blink red.

• IMPORTANT! If this alarm does not test properly, return it immediately for repair or replacement.
Procedures to Take During an LP Gas Alarm:

1. **EXTINGUISH** all flames and smoking material, & **Turn OFF** all gas appliances.
   (Stove, Heater, Furnace, Refrigerator, etc.)

2. **PRESS** the Test/Mute button to *temporarily* silence the alarm.
   • DO NOT disconnect power.

3. **EVACUATE** the RV.
   • Make sure to account for EVERYONE.
   • EXECUTE your Family Safety Plan.

4. **LEAVE** the door(s) and windows OPEN.

5. **TURN OFF** the propane tank valve.

6. **DETERMINE & REPAIR** the source of the leak.

7. **DO NOT** re-enter the RV until the problem is corrected.

*Contact your dealer or get professional help if necessary.*

How to take care of your alarm

The combination CO/Propane (LP) Gas Alarm is designed to be as maintenance free as possible. To keep your alarm in good working order:

- TEST the alarm weekly.
- VACUUM the dust off the alarm cover. At least once a year (more frequently in dusty locations) use the soft brush attachment of your vacuum to clean the alarm cover.
- CLEAN the alarm cover when it is dirty. Wash the alarm cover by hand using a cloth dampened in clean water. Dry with a soft cloth.
- DO NOT spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This action may damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause an alarm malfunction.
- OBSERVE the color of the *indicator light.*

At frequent intervals and during your weekly test, check the indicator light on the front panel of the alarm.

---

**WARNING**

- Actuation of the Propane (LP) Gas Alarm indicates the presence of LP gas, which can cause an explosion and/or fire.
- This normally indicates a leak in the LP gas piping or an LP gas appliance.
- If the information in the manufacturer manual is not followed exactly, a fire or explosion may result, causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.
Procedures to Take During a CO Alarm (USA)

If signal sounds (4 beeps and flashing or solid red light):

1. **PRESS** the Test/Mute button (to temporarily silence the alarm).
2. **MOVE TO FRESH AIR IMMEDIATELY**, either outdoors or by an open door or window.
   - CHECK that all persons are accounted for.
   - CALL 911, your local emergency service, or fire department.
   - DO NOT re-enter the premises (or move away from the open door/window) until the emergency responders arrive, the premises have been aired out, and your alarm remains in its normal operation.
3. **If your CO alarm re-activates within a 24-hour period:**
   - REPEAT steps 1-2.
   - CALL a qualified appliance technician to inspect that all fuel burning appliances are operating properly, and to investigate for sources of carbon monoxide.
   - IF PROBLEMS ARE IDENTIFIED during this inspection, have the equipment SERVICED IMMEDIATELY.
4. **NOTE any combustion equipment NOT inspected by the technician.**
   For more information about CO safety and this equipment, consult the manufacturers’ instructions, or contact the manufacturer directly.
5. **CONFIRM that a motor vehicle or generator engine operating nearby is NOT the source of CO inside your RV.**

Procedures to Take During a CO Alarm (Canada)

If signal sounds (4 beeps and flashing or solid red light):

1. **PUSH** the Test/Mute button.
2. **MOVE TO FRESH AIR IMMEDIATELY** (outdoors or by an open door/window).
   - CHECK that all persons are accounted for.
   - DO NOT re-enter the premises or move away from the open door/window until the emergency responders have arrived, the premises has been aired out, and your alarm remains in its normal condition.
3. **CALL** your emergency local service, fire department or 911.
Carbon Monoxide (CO) Alarm

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is also equipped with an additional carbon monoxide alarm. The CO alarm will sound if Carbon Monoxide (CO) in the air inside your RV reaches dangerous levels. If you hear this alarm, evacuate the RV immediately and stay outside in fresh air until the CO alarm ceases. It is important that you read and understand the OEM User’s Manual found in the Owner Information Package.

- The CO alarm is designed to be loud enough to wake up a sleeping person in an emergency.

Prolonged exposure to the CO alarm at close distance may be harmful to your hearing. Individuals with hearing loss or certain medical problems, should consider using warning devices that provide both audible and visual signals.

**If the CO alarm sounds:** See page 42 (Previous Page) Procedures to take during a CO alarm.

**Test the CO alarm weekly**

TEST the CO alarm at least once EVERY WEEK to make sure that it is working properly. Stand at arm’s length from the alarm when testing. The alarm horn is loud and may be harmful to your hearing.

PUSH and HOLD the TEST/SILENCE button on the cover until the red LED flashes. The alarm horn will sound 4 beeps-pause, 4 beeps-pause. The alarm sequence should last 5-6 seconds.

**If the alarm does not test properly:**

1. CHECK that the battery is installed correctly.
2. INSTALL a new 9V battery & RE-TEST the CO Alarm.
3. CHECK that the CO Alarm is clean and dust-free.
4. If it still does not alarm, REPLACE the CO Alarm immediately.

**Battery**

REPLACE the battery in your CO alarm when it “chirps” about once per minute (the low battery warning). NEVER disconnect the battery to silence the CO alarm.

- When the low battery warning sounds, the battery MUST be replaced to continue your protection.

**Maintenance**

To keep the CO Alarm in good working order:

- **DO NOT** clean with water, solvents, cleaning agents, bleach, or polish as these may damage the alarm.
- VACUUM the CO Alarm cover once a month, then RE-TEST.
- DO NOT paint over the unit. Paint may clog the openings to the sensing chambers and prevent it from operating properly.

**Carbon Monoxide (CO) Alarm Warnings are continued on the following page.**

**WARNING**

Actuation of your CO Alarm indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) which can KILL YOU.

This CO Alarm will ONLY indicate the presence of carbon monoxide gas at the sensor. Carbon monoxide gas may be present in other areas.

**TEST Carbon Monoxide Alarm operation:** after the RV has been in storage, before each trip, and once a week while in use.

- If the CO Alarm ever fails to test correctly, have it replaced immediately!
- If the CO Alarm is NOT working properly, it **cannot** alert you to a problem.
- Failure to test units used in RV’s as described may remove your protection.

**The Test/Silence button** is the only proper way to test the CO Alarm.

**NEVER** test the CO alarm with vehicle exhaust! Exhaust may cause permanent damage and voids your warranty.
Indoor Air Quality

To maintain indoor air quality:

• Allow your RV proper ventilation.
• Keep the interior clean.
• Avoid harmful air pollutants.

Common air pollution sources include molds, pollen, pet dander, cigarette smoke, household cleaners and carbon monoxide from burning propane, charcoal or other fuels.

• **Proper Ventilation** carries air pollutants outside your RV, and dilutes emissions from indoor sources with fresh air from the outdoors.

• **Poor Ventilation** may increase pollutant levels inside your RV. High temperature and humidity levels can also increase the concentration of some indoor air pollutants.

• **Those most at risk for REACTIONS to poor air quality** include: Children, The Elderly, and Persons with Asthma, Allergies, Heart Disease, or Chronic Lung Diseases such as Bronchitis and Emphysema.

To improve your air quality:

• BREATHE *fresh air* by opening windows.

• Spend as much time as you can OUTSIDE in *fresh air*.

• **CONTROL MOLD**:
  - CLEAN the bathroom and kitchen often.
  - FIX any water leaks.
  - CLOSE windows and RUN your air conditioner (AC) and/or your dehumidifier.
  - CLEAN any mold you see or smell with a solution of One Cup of **BLEACH** or less, to One Gallon of WATER.
  - NEVER mix bleach with ammonia.

• CLEAN & VACUUM often to get rid of dust and pet fur which can irritate your nose and throat.

• **DO NOT** use bug spray inside your trailer.

• **DO NOT** smoke inside your RV. In addition to causing damage to your RV, tobacco smoke releases formaldehyde and other air pollutants.

---

**CO Alarm Warnings continued from the previous page:**

**WARNING**

DO NOT stand close to the Alarm when the horn is sounding.
Exposure at close range may be harmful to your hearing. When testing, STEP AWAY when horn starts sounding.

**This CO Alarm does NOT operate without working batteries.**
Removing the batteries, or failure to replace them at the end of their service life, removes your protection.

**WARNING**

DO NOT try fixing the Alarm yourself, this will void your warranty!
If the CO Alarm is NOT operating properly, and it is still under warranty, please see “How to Obtain Warranty Service” in the Limited Warranty. Install a new CO Alarm immediately.

**WARNING**

DO NOT spray cleaning chemicals or insect sprays directly on or near the CO Alarm.
DO NOT paint over the CO Alarm. Doing so may cause permanent damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT stand close to the Alarm when the horn is sounding.
Exposure at close range may be harmful to your hearing. When testing, STEP AWAY when horn starts sounding.

**WARNING**

This CO Alarm does NOT operate without working batteries.
Removing the batteries, or failure to replace them at the end of their service life, removes your protection.

**WARNING**

DO NOT try fixing the Alarm yourself, this will void your warranty!
If the CO Alarm is NOT operating properly, and it is still under warranty, please see “How to Obtain Warranty Service” in the Limited Warranty. Install a new CO Alarm immediately.

**WARNING**

DO NOT spray cleaning chemicals or insect sprays directly on or near the CO Alarm.
DO NOT paint over the CO Alarm. Doing so may cause permanent damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT stand close to the Alarm when the horn is sounding.
Exposure at close range may be harmful to your hearing. When testing, STEP AWAY when horn starts sounding.

**WARNING**

This CO Alarm does NOT operate without working batteries.
Removing the batteries, or failure to replace them at the end of their service life, removes your protection.

**WARNING**

DO NOT try fixing the Alarm yourself, this will void your warranty!
If the CO Alarm is NOT operating properly, and it is still under warranty, please see “How to Obtain Warranty Service” in the Limited Warranty. Install a new CO Alarm immediately.

**WARNING**

DO NOT spray cleaning chemicals or insect sprays directly on or near the CO Alarm.
DO NOT paint over the CO Alarm. Doing so may cause permanent damage.
EPA Recommendations

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recommends three basic strategies to improve indoor air quality:

1. **Remove sources.** Eliminating the sources of pollution or reducing their emissions are the most effective ways to improve indoor air quality. This strategy can have an impact on the following pollutants:
   - Biological Contaminants such as bacteria, molds, mildew, viruses, animal dander, and pollen.
   - Household Products such as paints, varnishes, cleaning and disinfecting solutions, cosmetics and hobby products.
   - Pesticides.

2. **Ventilation.** Increasing the amount of outside air coming inside helps to lower the concentration of indoor pollutants. Allow fresh air to circulate your RV often. OPEN the doors, windows, and exhaust vents. Operating fans, vent fans, and the roof air conditioner(s) or furnace also helps to bring in fresh air and force out stale air.
   - Keeping your RV closed, decreases the air flow, which increases the presence of indoor air pollutants.
   - Many recommendations in this manual can assist you in avoiding exposure to air pollutants and outgassed chemicals.

   See the Next Page, Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing. See page 47-48, Tips to controlling condensation.

3. **Air Cleaners.** Air cleaners are designed to remove particles from the air. Their effectiveness depends on how well they collect pollutants from indoor air, and how much air is drawn through the cleaning/filtering element. An effective air cleaner requires both an efficient collector and a high air-circulation rate.

   There are many sizes and types of air cleaners on the market. Most of the less expensive, table-top models, are much less effective at particle removal. Generally, air cleaners DO NOT remove gaseous pollutants.

Chemical outgassing is NOT a defect in your RV. It is NOT covered by the Limited Base or Limited Structural Warranties. Please follow the recommendations in this section to address the concern.
Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing

When you first purchase your new RV, or after it has been closed for an extended time, you may notice a chemical odor due to outgassing. This is normal, and NOT a defect.

**Outgassing** (or offgassing) is the release of a chemical gas that was dissolved, trapped, frozen or absorbed in a material. The amounts released through outgassing decrease over time.

Just like in your home, RV construction uses many products such as plywood, carpet, insulation, vinyl flooring, upholstery, etc. These new products may outgas different chemicals, including formaldehyde. This can continue over time, and in particular, when exposed to elevated temperatures or humidity.

Because RVs are smaller than a home, the exchange of air inside your RV is much less. The minimal air exchange, can make the outgassed chemicals more noticeable.

**Chemical sensitivity** may cause you to experience irritation of the eyes, nose, and throat and sometimes headache, nausea, and a variety of asthma-like symptoms. Elderly persons, young children, or anyone with a history of asthma, allergies or lung problems, may be more susceptible to the effects of outgassing.

**Formaldehyde**

Most of the attention regarding chemical outgassing surrounds formaldehyde. Some people are very sensitive to formaldehyde exposure while others may have no reaction.

Formaldehyde is a naturally occurring substance. It is a key industrial chemical used in the manufacture of numerous consumer goods including products used in RV construction. Trace levels of formaldehyde are also released from smoking, cooking, and the use of many other household products like detergents, cleaners, paints, coatings and cosmetics.

**California Air Resource Board (CARB) Notice**

Formaldehyde is used widely in building materials such as pressed wood products, particleboard, hardwood plywood paneling, medium density fiberboard (MDF), and plywood which are commonly used throughout the Recreational Vehicle Industry. As mandated by the RV Industry, Grand Design RV recreation vehicles contain composite wood products (hardwood plywood, particle board, and MDF) that comply with the California Air Resource Board (CARB) formaldehyde emission standards under California Code of Regulations § 93120.2(a) Phase 2 (P2).
Effects of Prolonged Occupancy

- If you plan to occupy your RV for an extended period, be prepared to deal with condensation and the humid conditions that may be encountered.

Your RV is designed primarily for recreational and extended stay use. Modern RVs have a relatively small volume due to their compact construction. The normal living activities of even a few occupants in the RV, can lead to rapid moisture saturation of the air inside and the appearance of visible moisture, especially in cold weather.

Condensation

Condensation refers to the water droplets that appear on cold surfaces when the water vapor in the air cools, and changes to liquid water. In cold weather, it may be seen as frost or ice.

- Moisture can condense on the inside of an RV during cold weather the same way that moisture collects on the outside of a cold glass during humid weather.

Condensation may also collect out of sight within the walls or ceiling, causing warped or stained panels. Appearance of these conditions may indicate a serious condensation problem. To minimize condensation inside your RV, moisture in the air must be carried outside by ventilation, or removed with a dehumidifier (customer supplied).

Tips to controlling condensation

To reduce moisture in the air inside your RV, use these tips:

- Allow excess moisture to escape to the outside when bathing, washing dishes, hair drying, laundering and using appliances and non-vented gas burners.

- Keep the bathroom door closed, roof vent opened and turn on the exhaust fan (if equipped) while bathing or showering and for some time after you have finished.

- When cooking, always operate the range hood fan. Cooking releases heat and moisture that can quickly result in condensation in your RV; operating the range hood fan can be effective in removing both.

- DO NOT hang wet clothes in the RV to dry.

- Use a fan to keep air circulating inside the vehicle so condensation and mildew cannot form in dead air spaces.

If the tips presented here for controlling condensation are NOT effective, it may be necessary for you to invest in a dehumidifier to reduce the health risk to you or your family, as well as prevent damage to your RV.
Condensation, Continued

- Allow air to circulate, keeping the temperature the same throughout the RV, even inside the cabinets.
  - Leave closet and cabinet doors partially open.
  - A closed cabinet full of stored goods will prevent circulation and can cause condensation.

In hot weather

- Start the air conditioner early in the day to remove excess humidity from the air while lowering the temperature.

In cold weather

- During cold weather it is very important to continue utilizing your vents and vent fans. This will keep the humid air inside moving to the outside. Keeping the RV tightly closed during cold weather will increase condensation.
- Manage the inside temperature during cold weather. The warmer temperatures inside your RV will cause condensation to form on areas that are not well insulated (ie., windows, vents, wall studs, etc.).

Cold Weather Use

Please keep in mind, that your RV is not designed for use during sub-freezing weather. If you plan to use your RV in freezing (or below freezing) temperatures, the following precautions MUST be taken:

- The freshwater and drainage systems require added protection to avoid freezing.
- More frequent furnace operation, substantially increases battery draw and propane use. Sufficient power and propane are required to protect against possible freeze-ups on the propane regulator.
- Proper ventilation or the addition of a dehumidifier may be required to reduce condensation.
- To avoid damage to parts, CHECK the outside of the RV for ice BEFORE operating the: slide outs, compartment doors, locks, windows, vents etc.

*If you have further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.*
Where There Is Moisture, There May Be Mold

Molds are microscopic organisms that can live in virtually any indoor or outdoor environment. Mold growth requires a source of moisture (i.e., high humidity, wet/damp materials, standing water) and a temperature between 40° and 100° Fahrenheit.

According to the Center for Disease Control, exposure to damp and moldy environments may cause a variety of health defects, or none at all.

- For people sensitive to molds, mold exposure may cause nasal congestion, coughing, wheezing, and/or irritation of the eyes, throat, or skin.
- People with mold allergies may have more severe reactions to mold exposure. Immune-compromised people and those with chronic lung illnesses, like obstructive lung disease, risk serious lung infections.

Mold growth can be very harmful to the natural wood products and fabrics in your RV. Follow these tips to help control the relative humidity inside your RV and inhibit mold and mildew:

- While cooking and bathing, ALWAYS use the kitchen and bathroom vents, even during colder weather.
- In addition, opening a window will increase ventilation during these activities.
- Running your air conditioner will also reduce the relative humidity.
- In extremely humid conditions, using a dehumidifier (customer supplied) can be helpful.

Mold Prevention

To help protect your RV from mold, follow these important preventative measures:

- Clean regularly, especially the kitchen and bathroom. On safe surfaces, use cleaning products that kill mold and mildew.
- Any spills should be wiped up and dried right away.
- DO NOT leave any damp items inside the RV.
- Check sealants regularly. Reseal as needed to avoid water leaks.
Websites of Interest

We also recommend that you visit the following websites that maintain information about indoor air pollutants, including molds and formaldehyde, along with ways to improve indoor air quality:

- http://www.epa.gov/mold/moldguide.html

Website Usage Disclaimers

Grand Design RV hereby disclaims and sets forth as follows:

Website Disclaimer of Warranty

The services, information and materials on websites listed in this manual are provided “AS IS” and Grand Design RV shall have absolutely no liability whatsoever in connection with these website services, information, external links or third party links on these websites. Your use of these websites are at your own risk. Grand Design RV shall have no liability whatsoever for any errors, omissions or inaccuracies in the information regardless of how caused or for delays or interruptions in delivery of the information, or any decision made or action taken or not taken in reliance upon the information furnished.

Grand Design RV accepts no responsibility or liability whatsoever with regard to information on these websites as the information is meant to be of a general nature only and is not intended to address the specific circumstances of any particular individual or entity.

The information provided is not necessarily comprehensive, complete, accurate or up to date; the information is sometimes linked to external sites over which Grand Design RV has no control and for which Grand Design RV assumes no responsibility. Grand Design RV shall have no liability for any loss or injury caused, in whole or in part, by its actions, omissions or negligence, or for any contingencies beyond its control in procuring, compiling or delivering any information. The information is not professional nor does it comprise legal advice (if you need specific advice, you should always consult a suitably qualified professional).
Disclaimer of Endorsement

Any reference within external or third party links to any specific commercial products, process or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer or otherwise, does not constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation or favoring by Grand Design RV. The appearance of external or third party links does not constitute endorsement by Grand Design RV of the linked web sites or the information, products or services contained therein.

Grand Design RV does not exercise any editorial control over the information you may find at these locations. External or third party links may be provided for the convenience of the users of that website. Grand Design RV is not responsible for the availability or content of these external or third party sites and does not endorse, warrant or guarantee any products, services, information, centers or schools described or offered at these links.

Additional Safety Precautions

Air Quality

Proper ventilation of your RV is required to maintain air quality. Breathing and daily activities like cooking and bathing, add moisture to the air. This moisture can become condensation.

- Condensation inside your RV indicates that proper ventilation is NOT occurring.
- Condensation can lead to mold growth.
- Proper ventilation helps remove formaldehyde which is contained in some building materials as well as a by-product of combustion.

Generators

- Your RV is designed to ONLY use generators built specifically for RVs.

Generator / Vehicle Exhaust

ONLY operate a generator (OEM or customer supplied) in an open outdoor area where the exhaust can dissipate.

- To avoid the dangers of carbon monoxide, prevent exhaust gases from entering your RV.
- Close all entry/compartment doors and windows near vehicle or generator exhaust.

NOTICE

Generators are NOT intended to power sensitive electronic equipment without using an added appropriate line conditioner and surge protector.

Sensitive electronic equipment includes, but is not limited to, audio/video equipment, some TVs, computers, and printers.

These electronics should be operated on approved inverter-type generators or pure sine wave generators.
Additional Safety Precautions, Continued

Loading & Weight Distribution
- Distribute cargo weight evenly throughout your vehicle.
- NEVER exceed your RV’s Cargo Carrying Capacity or Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Place heavy items in the center of your vehicle, on the floor.
- Balance loads front-to-rear and side-to-side.

Passenger Safety
- DO NOT allow anyone to ride inside as a passenger while your RV is in motion.
  - This practice is against the law in several states.

Propane Appliances & Equipment
- Turn OFF all propane appliances and equipment (including the tanks) are BEFORE departing on a trip.
- Understand all propane safety warnings and follow manufacturer recommended operating procedures.
- Propane gas is flammable, improper use may result in a fire or explosion.

Tire Pressure
- ALWAYS check tire pressure BEFORE departing on any trip, even a short distance. For proper tire inflation pressures, refer to the Tire Information Label.

Towing
High cross winds and the external forces created by large trucks as they pass, may cause swaying or fishtailing. This can lead to a loss of control, resulting in serious injury or death. Under these conditions, slow down and pay close attention to other vehicles.
  - ALWAYS follow posted speed limits, and
  - Adjust for weather or road conditions that can impact the stability/handling of your tow vehicle and RV.

Wheel Torque
- ALWAYS check the torque on all lug nuts BEFORE departing on any trip, even a short distance.
- For lug nut torque specifications and patterns, refer to the Tire & Wheel section of this manual.
- ALWAYS use a calibrated torque wrench to confirm proper torque.
Pre-Travel Information

To help ensure your traveling enjoyment, update your GPS (customer supplied) and confirm that your route is planned with current road maps. Call ahead for tourist information for the areas that you will be visiting or traveling through. Research that your planned camping adventures comply with all federal, state and local regulations.

- Arrange for someone to check your house periodically while you are away. Stop mail or newspaper delivery.
- If you intend to be away for more than two weeks, you may want to consider requesting police surveillance for your house.
- Carry an extra set of vehicle and house keys with you on a separate key ring.
- Check that your driver’s license is valid. Be sure to renew your license in advance if it will expire during your trip.
- If you are planning to visit other countries, contact the consulate nearest the point at which you plan to enter that country for the specific and most current information (including rules for re-entering the United States).

Always carry your vehicle registration, insurance policy card(s) and warranty registration.

Tow Vehicle Disclaimer

- As a minimum requirement, your tow vehicle’s Towing Capacity MUST BE GREATER THAN the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of your RV.

Contact your automotive dealer to confirm the towing capacity of your vehicle, weather you are buying a new tow vehicle, or will tow your RV with one that you already own. Discuss the GVWR, size and type of RV that you will be towing. If you plan to purchase a new vehicle, some trucks can be purchased with an optional tow package.

Some automotive manufacturers publish brochures that discuss towing considerations. Ask your automotive dealer how to obtain a copy of this information. Verify that the weight ratings listed in the brochure are for your exact vehicle, ie, the correct year, model, engine, transmission, suspension and any relevant options.
Vehicle Labels

Decals and data plates used throughout the RV aid in its safe and efficient operation; others give service instructions. Read all decals, data and instruction plates before operating your RV. If any decal, data or instruction plate is painted over, damaged or removed, it should be replaced.

Weight Ratings & Definitions

It is essential to understand and stay within the weight ratings of your RV and tow vehicle. Learning these definitions is the first step in safely managing your RV’s weight and balance. Vehicle and trailer weight numbers fall into two categories:

• **Ratings** are maximum limits, NEVER to be exceeded. These limits are established by Grand Design RV and our component manufacturers in the design of the vehicle.

• **Weight** and **Load** are often used interchangeably. Weight is measured by putting an RV, tow vehicle or its components on a scale. Vehicles and cargo have weight, which impart loads to tires, axles, and hitches.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** - GAWR is the maximum weight each axle is designed to carry.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** - GVWR (also called *Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight*) includes the GAWR plus the hitch weight. It is the maximum allowed weight for a fully loaded RV or tow vehicle.

**Gross (Trailer/Vehicle) Weight** - Gross Weight is the total actual weight of your RV plus cargo, as measured on a scale.

**UVW (Unloaded Vehicle Weight)** - UVW is the weight of the RV as built at the factory. The UVW includes the empty LP bottles but does NOT include cargo, water, LP gas, or dealer-installed accessories.

**Hitch Weight** (or *Tongue Weight*) - is the amount of weight that presses down on the hitch when an RV is connected to a vehicle.

**CCC (Cargo Carrying Capacity)**

• United States: CCC is equal to GVWR minus the following: UVW and LP gas weight. *Water is considered cargo weight.*

• Canada: CCC is equal to GVWR minus the following: UVW, LP gas weight, and full fresh (or *potable*) water weight (*including the water heater*).

*For additional definitions, See page 207, Glossary.*
Weight Labels
Vehicle weight labels are affixed to your RV to help you make an informed decision before your purchase. Do not remove these labels. If the labels are missing, contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service for replacements.

Federal Certification Label
This label specifies maximum capacities for GVWR, GAWR and tires. It is located on the forward, off-door-side exterior.

Tire and Loading Information Label
This label specifies the maximum amount of cargo that can be safely added to the RV. It is located on the forward, off-door-side exterior.

Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC) Label
This label supplies the CCC information for the customer. It is located on the backside of an upper cabinet door in the kitchen area.
Cargo Capacities

When loading cargo into your RV, DO NOT exceed:

- Maximum weight specified on the Cargo Carrying Capacity label
- GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)
- Maximum Load Rating of your RV tires.

Maximum Load Rating

The Maximum Load Rating of your RV tires is LESS THAN the GVWR. To calculate the actual weight on your RV tires, subtract the hitch weight from your RV’s Gross Weight. The hitch weight is carried by your tow vehicle, not the RV tires.

For example:

- if your RV’s tires are each rated at 2,000 lbs.  
  \[
  2,000 \text{ lbs.} \times 4 \text{ tires} = 8,000 \text{ lbs.} 
  \]

- Gross Weight is 9,000 lbs.
- with a hitch weight of 1,200 lbs., then 
  \[
  9,000 \text{ lbs.} - 1,200 \text{ lbs.} = 7,800 \text{ lbs.} 
  \]

The actual weight on the RV tires is 7,800 lbs., This is under the load rating of the tires.

- \[
  7,800 \text{ lbs.} \div 4 \text{ tires} = 1,950 \text{ lbs. each} 
  \]

Water and Propane

- Your FRESH WATER is treated as CARGO WEIGHT.
- Water weighs approximately 8.34 lbs. per gallon.
  - 50 gallons of water weighs 417 lbs.

If you are close to your GVWR, reducing the amount of water in the holding tank will increase the amount of available cargo weight by the same amount. This flexibility allows you to make choices that fit your travel and camping needs.

Remember:

- Unloaded Vehicle Weight is calculated with empty LP bottles.
- Cargo Carrying Capacity is calculated including the weight of full LP bottles. \[ CCC = GVWR - (UVW - LP gas weight) \]

If you have further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.
Loading Your RV

For traveling safety, distribute your cargo evenly side-to-side. Keep the weight on each tire from exceeding one-half of the GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) for either axle.

During a sudden stop, free-standing furniture or overlooked items on the counter top or range can become dangerous projectiles.

- It is important to secure the appliance or furniture tie down straps (if so equipped).
- Store and secure all loose items inside the RV before traveling. Check that items such as canned goods, pots & pans, small appliances, etc. are safely put away.

Weighing Your Tow Vehicle & RV

To confirm that your loaded RV complies with all vehicle, tire and axle weight ratings, weigh your RV at a public scale. This will also help you to determine the proper load distribution. Keep in mind that individual scales will operate differently and that the area around the scale must allow for weighing each side of your RV.

- **Total Weight** and **Balance** are the two most important factors when loading your RV.
- ALWAYS verify that your loaded RV is in compliance with all applicable weight ratings.
- Overloading your RV will void the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty, and the warranties of many component part manufacturers.

**To weigh your tow vehicle and RV**

Read through all the weighing instructions before you begin. Your RV must be weighed fully loaded (ie. with food, clothing, water, supplies, propane, fuel, etc.).

1. Weigh the RV while unhitched from your tow vehicle to obtain your **Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)**.
   - **For safe operation:** Your RV’s GVW **must** be LESS THAN or EQUAL TO the GVWR.
   - If your RV’s GVW is GREATER THAN the GVWR, remove contents until your weight is in compliance with the listed ratings.

**WARNING**

ONLY store items in the areas designated for storage.

DO NOT store anything in the areas reserved for the furnace, water heater, converter, or electrical panels, etc.

**WARNING**

NEVER load the RV in excess of the GAWR for either axle.

Overloading the RV may result in adverse handling characteristics & damage to the chassis.

**WARNING**

DO NOT EXCEED YOUR GVWR! This means you should weigh your RV as loaded for your normal travel to determine the actual weight.

If you exceed the GVWR, you MUST remove items from the RV, or drain liquids, then re-weigh the RV to ensure you have achieved a safe weight.

DO NOT travel with full grey/black holding tanks. This not only wastes gas but, depending upon the location of the grey or black holding tanks, can affect handling characteristics.
Weighing Your Tow Vehicle & RV, Continued

2. Hitch the RV to your tow vehicle. Weigh the RV and the tow vehicle to obtain your *Gross Combined Weight* (GCW).
   - Confirm that this overall weight is *LESS THAN*, or *EQUAL TO* the *Gross Combined Weight Rating* (GCWR) specified by the manufacturer of your tow vehicle.
   - If this total weight is *GREATER THAN* the GCWR, remove contents until your combined weight is in compliance.

3. Now, while still hitched to the tow vehicle, pull onto the scale to weigh ONLY the RV. Record the weight. This measures the total load that is exerted on the RV tires.
   - The difference of this weight, subtracted from the GVW is the *Hitch Weight*.

4. To obtain the side-to-side weights, there must be enough space on either side of the scale to accommodate the RV being partially off the scale.
   - Pull the RV so that the tires of *only one side* are on the scale. Your RV must remain as level as possible.
   - The weight of one side of the RV, *MUST* be equal to *one half* of the weight determined in step #3.
   - If the weight of one side of the RV is *NOT* equal to *one half* of the weight from step #3, redistribute the load until the RV is equally balanced side-to-side.

When a load is unbalanced, the components on the heavier side (tires, wheels, brakes, springs, etc.) may be overloaded, even though the total axle load is within the GAWR.

**Traveling while your RV is overloaded or with a load that is unbalanced:**

- Will adversely affect the handling of your tow vehicle,
- Can cause component failure, *and*
- Void your Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty.

*If you have further questions, consult with your dealer or the scale operator.*
Tire Safety Information

This portion of the Owner’s Manual contains tire safety information as required by 49 CFR 575.6(4) and is based in part on the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration’s (NHTSA) brochure titled Tire Safety, Everything Rides On It.

It is available as a free download on the NHTSA website: https://one.nhtsa.gov/Vehicle-Safety/Tires/Tire-Safety:-Everything-Rides-On-It

Studies of tire safety show that the most important things you can do to avoid tire failure, blowouts and flat tires are:

- Maintain proper tire pressure.
- Observe tire and vehicle load limits. (NEVER carry more weight in your vehicle than your tires or vehicle can safely handle).
- Avoid road hazards.
- Drive within the designated tire speed ratings,
- Inspect tires for cuts, slashes, and other irregularities.

These actions, along with other care and maintenance activities can also:

- Improve vehicle handling.
- Help protect you and others from avoidable breakdowns and accidents.
- Improve fuel economy.
- Increase the life of your tires.

Make tire safety a regular part of your vehicle maintenance routine. Know that the time you spend is minimal compared with the inconvenience and safety consequences of a flat tire or other tire failure.

Basic Tire Maintenance - Safety First

Proper tire maintenance improves the stopping distance, traction, steering, and load-carrying capability of your vehicle. As mentioned above, to prevent flat tires and other types of tire failure, you should maintain proper tire pressure, observe tire and vehicle load limits, avoid road hazards, and regularly inspect your tires. See page 63, Tire Safety Tips.
Recommended Tire Pressure & Load Limits

The major causes of tire failure are under-inflated tires and overloaded vehicles. Tire information placards and vehicle certification labels provide important information on tires and load limits, including:

- Recommended Tire Size
- Recommended Tire Inflation Pressure
- Cargo Weight (the maximum cargo weight the RV is designed to carry)
- Front and Rear Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) (the maximum weight the axle system is designed to carry)

For the label locations and more detailed information, See page 55, Weight Labels

Understanding Tire Pressure & Load Limits

Load Limits are determined by the tire size and the greatest amount of weight each tire can safely carry.

Tire Pressure is the amount of air pressure a tire requires to be properly inflated. It is measured in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure affects your RV’s overall performance and provides the load-carrying capacity.

The proper tire pressure for your vehicle is referred to as the cold inflation pressure. You will also find this number on the vehicle information placard expressed in both PSI and kilo-pascals (KPA), the metric measurement used internationally.

It is difficult to obtain the recommended tire pressure when the tires are not cold.

See the next page, Checking Tire Pressure.

WARNING
Keep tires properly inflated. A tire that is run long distances or at high speeds while seriously under-inflated will overheat to the point where the tire may lose air suddenly and/or catch fire, possibly resulting in damage to the vehicle and its contents and/or personal injury.

WARNING
Exceeding the established weight ratings for the axles, running gear, tires and wheels can lead to failure that can affect motor vehicle safety and lead to property damage or damage to the RV.
Checking Tire Pressure

It is important to check your vehicle’s tire pressure at least once a month for the following reasons:

- Most tires naturally lose air over time.
- Tires can lose air suddenly by driving over a pothole, hitting road debris, or striking the curb when parking.
- With radial tires, it is usually not possible to determine under-inflation by visual inspection.

*For safety and convenience, purchase a tire pressure gauge to keep in your vehicle. They are sold at auto parts stores, hardware stores and many other retail outlets.*

**Steps for maintaining proper tire pressure**

1. To find the recommended tire pressure, locate the RV’s Tire and Loading Information label located on the off-door-side, forward exterior.
2. Check the tire pressure of all tires with a tire pressure gauge (customer supplied).
   a. If the tire pressure is *TOO HIGH* in any of the tires, gently press on the tire valve stem with the edge of your tire gauge. Slowly release air until the correct pressure is reached.
   b. If the tire pressure is *TOO LOW* in any of the tires, note the difference between the measured tire pressure and the correct tire pressure. This is the amount of air pressure that needs to be added.

*Although it is ideal to check and fill tires when they are cold, if you have been driving and have an RV tire that is under-inflated, fill it to the recommended cold inflation pressure* (found on your RV’s Tire & Loading Information label).

- The warm tire may remain *slightly* under-inflated, but is much safer than driving with a *significantly* under-inflated tire. **This fix is ONLY temporary.**
- REMEMBER to re-check and adjust the tire’s pressure as-soon-as you can obtain a cold reading.

3. At a service station or using an air compressor, add air to each tire that is under-inflated.
4. Re-check all tires to confirm that they have the (same) correct air pressure.
How Overloading Affects Your RV and Tires

The results of overloading can have serious consequences for passenger safety. Too much weight on your vehicle’s suspension system can cause spring, shock absorber, or brake failure, handling or steering problems, irregular tire wear, tire failure or other damage.

An overloaded vehicle is hard to drive and hard to stop. In cases of serious overloading, brakes can fail completely, particularly on steep hills. The load a tire will carry safely is a combination of the size of tire, its load range, and corresponding inflation pressure. Excessive loads and/or under-inflation cause tire overloading and, as a result, abnormal tire flexing occurs. This situation can generate an excessive amount of heat within the tire. Excessive heat may lead to tire failure.

It is the air pressure that enables a tire to support the load, so proper inflation is critical. Since RVs can be configured and loaded in many ways, air pressures must be determined from actual loads (determined by weighing) and taken from the load and inflation tables provided by the tire manufacturer. These air pressures may differ from those found on the certification label. However, they should never exceed the tire limitation for load or air pressure. If you discover that your tires cannot support the actual weights, the load will need to be lightened.

Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate your RV’s Cargo Carrying Capacity label.
2. Find the statement “The weight of cargo should never exceed XXX KG or XXX LBS”
3. This available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the RV. That weight MAY NOT safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity.

DANGER

If the total weight of the RV exceeds the GVWR, the trailer is overloaded.
Operating your RV while exceeding the specified weight ratings increases the risk of a crash, personal injury and death.
It is necessary to remove payload (equipment, water, personal belongings, etc.) until the total weight of the RV no longer exceeds the GVWR before operating the RV.

DANGER

If the weight on the trailer axles exceeds the GAWR, the axles are overloaded.
Operating your RV while exceeding the specified weight ratings increases the risk of a crash, personal injury and death.
It is necessary to remove or rearrange payload (equipment, personal belongings, water, etc.) until the axle weight no longer exceeds the GAWR before operating the unit.
Not operating your RV within the designed weight ratings can damage your recreational vehicle which is not covered under warranty.
Tire Safety Tips

Preventing tire damage

• DO NOT run over curbs or foreign objects in the roadway or when parking.

• If you can NOT avoid a pothole or other object in the road, SLOW WAY DOWN.

Tire safety checklist

1. Check tire pressure at least monthly, including the spare.

2. Inspect tires for uneven wear patterns on the tread, cracks, foreign objects, or any other damage.

3. Carefully remove bits of glass or foreign objects wedged in the tread.

4. Check that all tire valves have valve caps.

5. Check tire pressure before going on any trip.

6. DO NOT overload your vehicle.
   • Check the Tire and Loading Information label.

Tire Labeling

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire.

• A tire identification number is also provided for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

US DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 3197 means the 31st week of 1997. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer’s discretion. This is the number used to identify a tire in the event of a recall.
Tire Size

To maintain tire safety, purchase new tires that are the same size as the vehicle’s original tires or another size recommended by the manufacturer. Look at the Tire and Loading Information label, or the sidewall of the tire you are replacing to find this information. If you have any doubt about the correct size to choose, consult with the tire dealer.

Tire Size & Type Designation

The tires on your unit may for example, be marked with a designation of \textbf{ST 225/75R15}. \textit{ST} stands for \textit{Standard Trailer}, and the number breaks down as follows:

- The first three-digit number gives the width in millimeters of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.
- The next two-digit number after the “slash” mark, known as the aspect ratio, gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.
- R - The “R” stands for radial.
- The last two-digit number is the wheel or rim diameter in inches.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Speed Rating

- Typical \textbf{ST} tires have a speed rating designation of “\textbf{L}”, which is 75 mph (under normal inflation and load conditions.)
- \textbf{DO NOT} exceed the speed rating regardless of the posted maximum speed limit.

\textit{Tires are warranted by the tire manufacturer, not by Grand Design RV.}

\textit{If you need tire warranty assistance, please contact your dealer or refer to the tire warranty pamphlets provided with your RV.}
Tire Tread

The tire tread provides the gripping action and traction that prevent your vehicle from slipping or sliding, especially when the road is wet or icy. In general, tires are not safe and should be replaced when the tread is worn down to 1/16 of an inch.

Tread wear bars are raised sections built into the bottom of a tire’s tread grooves that show how much tread is remaining. When they appear “even” with the outside of the tread, it is time to replace your tires.

The Penny & Quarter Tests

Place a penny or quarter upside down into the tire groove.

- **Penny** - If you can see the top of Lincoln’s head, you are ready for new tires.
- **Quarter** - If you can see the top of Washington’s head, tires are OK but close to wearing out.

*Inspect your tires regularly for uneven tread wear.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wear Pattern</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edge Wear</strong></td>
<td>Under Inflation</td>
<td>Fill tire with an air compressor to the Recommended Cold Tire Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thin Tread Wear on Tire Edges</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Center Wear</strong></td>
<td>Over Inflation</td>
<td>Press tire valve stem, slowly release air until reaching the Recommended Cold Tire Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thin Tread Wear Center of Tire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Side Wear</strong></td>
<td>Loss of Camber or Overloading</td>
<td>Make sure your load does NOT exceed the axle rating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exaggerated Inner or Outer Tread Wear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toe Wear</strong></td>
<td>Alignment or Incorrect Toe-in</td>
<td>Correct Toe-In is 0 - 0.5 degrees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thin Inner or Outer Edge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cup Wear</strong></td>
<td>Loose Bearings or Wheel Balance</td>
<td>Check Bearing Adjustment and Tire &amp; Wheel Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagonal “Scalloped” Tread Wear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flat Spots</strong></td>
<td>Tire Skidding Wheel Lock Up or Out of Balance</td>
<td>Avoid Sudden Stops, Adjust Brakes Check Tire &amp; Wheel Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat Spots or Patchy Tread Wear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tire Ply Composition & Materials
A tire is built from multiple layers of rubber-coated fabric. Each layer is called a ply. In general, the higher the number of plies in a tire, the more weight it can support. Tire manufacturers must report all materials used in the composition of the tire, i.e., steel, nylon, polyester, etc.

Maximum Load Rating
The Maximum Load Rating indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Spare Tire
The spare tire is used if a trailer tire is damaged, flat, or loses air pressure. The spare tire/wheel may differ from the original equipment, and is intended for temporary use ONLY.

The spare tire is secured below your RV. Locate the 1” access hole in the skirt metal on the door-side of your RV, approximately even with the spare tire.

• Insert the crank handle extension.
• Turn counter-clockwise to lower the spare tire.
• Turn clockwise to raise the spare tire.

Tire Changing Basics
• Hydraulic Jack & Jack Stands are customer supplied.
  1. See page 68, Roadside Emergency.
  2. Block the wheels on the opposite side from the tire you wish to change. This will prevent accidental movement.
  3. Loosen the wheel lugs BEFORE raising the RV.
  4. Place a Hydraulic Jack on the frame close to the spring hanger. Raise the trailer until the tire clears the ground. NEVER attempt to use a stabilizer jack to lift the RV.
  5. Set up a Jack Stand under the frame just to the rear of the tire being changed, then change your tire.
  6. Follow the Wheel Nut Torque and Wheel Installation instructions provided on the Next Page.
Wheel Nut Torque

Torque is the amount of rotating force applied to a fastener, such as a lug nut. The axle and wheel assemblies of your RV are designed differently than those on your car. The overall weight, size and center of gravity of the RV subject the wheels to extreme pressures. During normal cornering, the tires and wheels experience a considerable amount of stress called side-load. Therefore, the lug nuts on your RV require frequently torque maintenance.

- ALWAYS use a properly calibrated torque wrench to confirm proper torque.
- ALWAYS check lug nut torque on each wheel before departure, regardless of how short the trip may be.
- DO NOT allow under-torque or over-torque on any wheel.
- Tighten the lugs in the correct order for your RV's lug pattern shown in the diagram. (Right)

Find your RV's wheel size on the table (Below). Tightening the lugs should be done in three stages. Determine the correct torque for each stage, and use the torque sequence shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wheel Size</th>
<th>Stud Size</th>
<th>Torque Sequence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14&quot;</td>
<td>1/2&quot;</td>
<td>1st Stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2nd Stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3rd Stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15&quot;</td>
<td>1/2&quot;</td>
<td>20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16&quot;</td>
<td>1/2&quot;</td>
<td>20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5” x 6.75”</td>
<td>1/2”</td>
<td>20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16”</td>
<td>9/16”</td>
<td>20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5” x 6.75”</td>
<td>9/16”</td>
<td>20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5” w/ long nut</td>
<td>5/8”</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5” w/ flange nut</td>
<td>5/8”</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5” Demount</td>
<td>1/2”</td>
<td>85-95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* NOTE: All torque in ft.-lbs.

WARNING

Always torque the wheel nuts to the specifications of the wheel manufacturer. Over or under-torqued wheel nuts can cause the wheel to separate from the wheel mounting surface during operation, causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.
Roadside Emergency

A roadside emergency can happen at any time. ALWAYS carry an emergency kit with three red warning signs (or indicators) to display if necessary.

If you must make an emergency roadside stop:

• Pull off the road as far as possible.
• Turn ON the hazard warning flashers (or hazard lights) to alert other drivers.
• The hazard warning flashers warn passing drivers to approach and overtake your vehicle with caution.

Use the three red warning indicators (signs, reflectors, lanterns, or road flares) as follows:

1. Place the 1st indicator 10 feet behind the RV on the off-door side (road side).
2. Place the 2nd indicator 100 feet behind the RV in the center of the lane.
3. Place the 3rd indicator 100 feet in front of the RV in the center of the lane.

• 10 feet = 4 paces, 100 feet = 40 paces
• Curves and/or hills may affect the safe placement of the warning indicators.

FOR YOUR PERSONAL SAFETY in the event of a roadside emergency, ALWAYS STAND:

• OFF of the road, and
• AWAY from any traffic.

Emergency Towing

If you require towing, please contact an emergency road service provider or a qualified service facility for assistance.
Towing & Leveling

To improve safe driving and help protect against injury, please follow these recommendations:

- Keep the RV and tow vehicle tires properly inflated, and REPLACE the tires BEFORE they are excessively worn.
- ALWAYS wear your seatbelt and obey all traffic laws.
  - DO NOT exceed the posted speed limit.
  - Many states have lower speed limits for tow vehicle/RV combinations.
- ALWAYS be a courteous and alert driver.
  - Watch out for other drivers, bicyclists and pedestrians.
  - Pay attention to traffic and road conditions.
  - BEFORE changing lanes, check the outside rearview mirrors for other vehicles and use your turn signals.
  - Leave room for sudden braking and other unexpected events.
- ALWAYS use the daytime running lights on your tow vehicle to increase visibility to other drivers.
- NEVER drive when you are sleepy or tired.
- NEVER drive when alcohol, drugs or medication have affected your judgment, reflexes or alertness.
- Adverse weather conditions or extreme terrain may affect your tow vehicle’s performance and handling.
  - DO NOT use the tow vehicle’s cruise control on icy, wet, or winding roads; or any other traffic situations where a constant speed could be dangerous.

Propane Safety
- ALWAYS shut OFF the propane system at the LP cylinder BEFORE you travel.
- If you drive with the propane system ON, the dangers are greatly increased in the event of an accident or fire.
- While you travel, most refrigerators will keep food cold or frozen for eight hours without running.
RV Driving Schools & Seminars

If you have any concerns about driving while towing a RV, consult an expert for specific RV driver education. There are private RV schools and some RV owner’s organizations that offer driving seminars. The schedules and locations of the various RV driver education seminars and schools can be researched through RV-related publications and websites.

*Please use caution when using websites as a resource tool. Verify the information is from a credited and reliable source in the RV industry, and pertains to your specific RV. If in doubt, contact your dealer for assistance.*

RV Braking System

The RV brakes are designed to work with your tow vehicle brakes. To maintain proper braking performance, both the RV and tow vehicle brakes *must be used together*. Separate use of the braking systems will cause accelerated wear and damage.

When your RV is new, it is impossible to adjust the brake shoes precisely. It takes approximately 1,000 miles and/or 50 medium to heavy stops to *burnish fit or seat* the shoes to the brake drum. After the initial break-in period, your brake shoes must be adjusted accurately for best performance and increased durability.

**Braking system components include:**

- Tow Vehicle Battery
- Brake Controller
- Wire Harness/Connector Plug
- Auxiliary Batteries, *also see Electrical System*
- Breakaway Switch

---

**If your RV is equipped with Hydraulic Disc Brakes:**

**BEFORE towing your RV:**

- You *must* check the compatibility with your tow vehicle’s integrated brake controller on the *Tow Vehicle and Aftermarket Brake Controller Compatibility* chart.
- Read the entire Trailer Brake Actuator owner’s manual for all safety warnings and detailed operating instructions.
- The chart and manual are both included in your *Owner Information Package*.

*For further information, Contact your dealer or Grand Design Customer Service.*
Tow Vehicle Battery
The tow vehicle battery is the primary source of power for your RV’s brake operation. To ensure available power when needed, keep your tow vehicle battery and charging system working properly.

Battery Isolator (Customer Supplied)
You may want to install a battery isolator on your tow vehicle. A battery isolator is a device that:

- Receives current from the tow vehicle alternator to independently charge both the RV auxiliary battery and the tow vehicle battery.
- Prevents the RV from draining your tow vehicle battery (so you can start your tow vehicle engine).

Your dealer can assist you with the selection, purchase and installation of this aftermarket part.

Brake Controller (Customer Supplied)
The brake controller should be installed in the tow vehicle to work in conjunction with the RV electric brakes. Consult with your dealer or the brake controller OEM to decide what is right for your towing combination.

7-Way Wire Harness/ Connector Plug
The 7-way wire harness/connector plug is wired into your FW to connect electrical power from the tow vehicle for travel. This supplies power to the RV brakes, tail lights, clearance lights, turn signals, brake lights, etc. Wiring to operate your brakes must be the same size in both the tow vehicle and RV.

Maintenance
The connector plug may build up corrosion with extended use and should be cleaned periodically to insure good electrical contact. Make sure the connector plug is kept clean and protected from road elements as you travel.
Breakaway Switch

The breakaway switch is located by the FW pin box. It is a crucial part of the RV braking system. If the RV becomes detached from the tow vehicle, the lanyard pulls the pin from the breakaway switch, which automatically activates the RV brakes.

- While hitching the RV, ALWAYS secure the breakaway switch lanyard to a permanent part of the tow vehicle.
- Check that your auxiliary battery (customer supplied) is correctly installed, and fully charged BEFORE travel.

An auxiliary battery (customer supplied) MUST be installed to provide power to the breakaway switch.

Fifth Wheel (FW) Pin Box Hitch

Hitch selection is important because it affects the towing and handling characteristics of your RV. There are many kinds of hitches available for various uses and assuring that you have the correct hitch installed is critical to a safe towing experience. The factory installed FW pin box is not interchangeable.

Ask your dealer about the proper class and type of hitch you need to purchase for your individual tow vehicle/RV combination. A FW requires a pin box hitch bolted directly to the floor of the truck box through the frame. Before selecting a hitch, you must know your GVWR and pin box rating.

Fifth wheel pin box height

There is no recommended hitch height for fifth wheels; usually the FW pin box is adjustable for variance in trucks and truck suspension systems. Adjust the hitch assembly so the tow vehicle and the FW are essentially level.

- A high hitch will transfer weight behind the axles and cause the vehicle to fishtail.
- A low hitch will transfer additional weight to the hitch.

To adjust the weight distributing hitch to the proper height, Please refer to the hitch manufacturer instructions.
Fifth Wheel Hitching Procedure

The FW hitching procedure (below) becomes easier with practice. To safely hook up your FW to your tow vehicle, use the following steps:

1. ALWAYS use wheel chocks to block the trailer wheels.
2. Check that your hitch lever is in the OPEN (or cocked) position.
   • Unless it is designed to open automatically.
3. Adjust the FW pin to the proper height.
4. OPEN the truck tailgate.
   • Unless your truck is equipped with a tailgate designed to accommodate a FW hitch.
5. Back up your truck so the hitch encircles the FW pin.
6. Making gentle contact of the hitch saddle against the pin will cause the mechanism to close.
7. Secure the hitch lever as specified in the manufacturer.
   ◦ Shift the truck into drive, but
   ◦ DO NOT press on the accelerator.
   ◦ Bump the hitch to make sure it is locked.
8. Check that the FW landing legs are fully RETRACTED.
9. Attach the breakaway switch cable to the tow vehicle. Leave enough slack to accommodate tight turns.
10. Connect the 7-way wire harness from the FW to your tow vehicle and secure in the travel position.
11. Walk around the RV to verify the exterior lights are working correctly,
12. Remove the wheel chocks from the trailer wheels.

WARNING
NEVER allow anyone to go under the RV while it is being lifted and/or towed.

NOTICE
The FW landing legs must be fully retracted before moving or towing the RV to prevent damage.
Towing the RV

Braking & Stopping Distance

Towing an RV greatly increases your stopping distance. Practice braking in a large parking lot (where it is permissible) to become familiar with your RV’s stopping distance before driving in traffic.

- AVOID conditions that require excessive and prolonged use of your brakes. Smooth starts and easing to a stop will save wear and tear on your RV/tow vehicle combination.

When descending a long hill, drop into a lower gear (or a lower range, if you have automatic transmission). This allows your tow vehicle’s engine and transmission to help control your speed which can extend brake life.

- Apply and release the brakes at short intervals to give them a chance to cool.

- Driving through deep water may get the brakes wet, increasing stopping distance or causing the vehicle to pull to one side.
  - DO NOT operate the vehicle if a difference in braking efficiency is noticeable. Check the RV’s brake operation in a safe area to be sure they have not been affected.

Weight and Clearance Limits

In order to obey all posted Weight and Clearance Limits, you MUST always know the Gross Weight and total Height of your RV/tow vehicle combination.

- ALWAYS include the roof air conditioners, TV antennas, and floodlights as they may cause clearance problems under some tunnels, canopies or hanging signs.

- Some bridges, older ones in particular, may not support the weight of your RV/tow vehicle combination.

Road Conditions

ALWAYS adjust your driving for road conditions.

- Slow way down, then release your brakes before crossing railroad tracks.

- Sudden acceleration or deceleration on a wet or icy roads can cause skidding and loss of control.

- Slow down well in advance of any bumps or dips in the road to reduce jolting your RV/tow vehicle combination.

- Drive over any uneven surfaces slowly and make sure to have passed them completely before accelerating.
Passenger Safety

- DO NOT allow anyone to ride inside as a passenger while your RV is in motion.
- This practice is against the law in several states.

Turning Corners

While making a turn:

- The RV does NOT follow the path of your Tow Vehicle.
- The RV will make a TIGHTER turn than your Tow Vehicle.

You must compensate for this action by carefully pulling the tow vehicle out into the intersection further than you normally would so that the RV clears the curb (or any parked vehicles along the curb).

Passing

While towing an RV, it takes longer to reach highway speeds. Allow additional time to safely overtake and pass vehicles.

- Changing lanes in traffic also takes longer due to the extra length of your RV/tow vehicle combination.
- ALWAYS drive with caution and avoid situations that may require quickly changing your speed or your lane.

Backing Up

If there are no pull through sites at your camping destination, choose a level site and back in carefully. BEFORE you park, exit your tow vehicle, and inspect that site conditions are satisfactory.

- Check that you have plenty of vehicle clearance.
- Check that your path is free of obstacles. (ie., low-hanging tree limbs, posts, large rocks)
- Try to choose a site that is on the driver’s side, so that you can easily see the rear of the RV.
- A site on the passenger side is more difficult, since you back into the site on your blind side.
- Position your tow vehicle and RV for backing into the site.
- Back up the RV slowly. Watch your tow vehicle mirrors and Back Up Camera (customer supplied) carefully to help you guide the RV into the site.
- Have another person outside the RV to assist you until the RV is parked in the desired position.

WARNING

- When making a turn, check the road clearance and be aware of others.
- Have someone help guide you out of a difficult parking space or traffic pattern.
- Swerves and sharp turns, especially at high speeds, could result in loss of control of the RV.
Towing & Leveling

If the parking spot is on asphalt on a very hot day or on dirt and/or gravel, a block of wood under each jack leg can be used to spread the load and reduce the possibility of the leg sinking into the surface.

Towing the RV, Continued

Parking
Once the RV is in your desired location:

1. Set the tow vehicle parking brake.
2. Turn OFF the ignition switch.
3. Go outside and block the RV wheels securely with wheel chocks.
   • *The wheel chocks can be wood blocks or purchased items as long as they prevent the RV from rolling.*

Unhitching from the Tow Vehicle

1. Choose a mostly level place to park, and pull the RV into the site.
2. Block the wheels to keep the RV from rolling.
3. LOWER the landing legs to stabilize the RV.
   • *For proper operation, it is important to follow the manufacturer’s instructions.*
4. Disconnect the wire harness/7-Way Plug.
5. Disconnect the Breakaway Switch Lanyard (cable).
6. OPEN the truck tailgate.
   • *Unless your truck is equipped with a tailgate designed to accommodate a FW hitch.*
7. Shift your truck into reverse, *but DO NOT press on the accelerator.*
   • This moves the kingpin off the locking bar, so that it can be disengaged.
8. Apply the brakes, *then* Set your parking brake.
9. Disengage the locking bar, *then* Unhitch the RV.
10. Pull away your tow vehicle.
11. Level the RV (front to back) by adjusting the fifth-wheel height.

If the parking spot is on asphalt on a very hot day or on dirt and/or gravel, a block of wood under each jack leg can be used to spread the load and reduce the possibility of the leg sinking into the surface.
Leveling the RV

With the unit parked, the next step is to level your RV.

- A small level should be used in the refrigerator, and on the counter top or floor to confirm the RV is level.

Leveling your RV is important

- The refrigerator (and other appliances) are designed to perform best when the RV is level.
- The water system is designed to drain properly when the RV is level.
- Sleeping and walking inside is more comfortable when the RV is level.

BEFORE you operate the hydraulic leveling system

ALWAYS make sure that:

1. The RV is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. The tow vehicle is disengaged from the RV.
3. All persons, pets and property are clear of the RV while the leveling system is in operation.

Maintenance

1. Every month, check the fluid level. With the legs and slideouts retracted, the fluid should be within ¼ inch of the fill spout lip.
2. ALWAYS retract the leveling legs (and slideouts) BEFORE adding fluid to the reservoir.

DO NOT fill the reservoir with the legs (or slideouts) extended, or it will overflow when they are retracted.

3. Inspect and clean all pump unit electrical connections every 12 months.
4. Remove dirt and road debris from the leveling gear as needed.
5. Leveling legs that stay in the extended position for long periods require protection from the elements.
- Spray the exposed landing gear rod with a silicone lubricant every three (3) months.
- If your RV is located in a salty environment, spray the rods with a silicone lubricant every four to six (4-6) weeks.

WARNING

DO NOT USE THE FW LANDING LEGS TO SUPPORT THE TOW VEHICLE WEIGHT.

The FW landing legs are designed to bear the front loaded weight of the RV only.

NOTICE

Ensure that the RV is level before operating the slideout room.

Water leaks and other problems could result if the slideout is operated without leveling the RV.

NOTICE

The landing legs may bind in overload conditions, resulting in premature wear of the drive gear and stripping of the gear. Premature gear wear will also occur with excessive clutching of the motor - this occurs at maximum extension and retraction. Once clutch noise is heard, release the landing leg control switch.
Leveling Instructions Labels

To operate the hydraulic leveling system, read and follow the instructions printed on the manufacturer’s instruction labels mounted with the manual leveling controls on the inside of the off-door side (ODS) forward compartment door.

**DO NOT remove these labels from the inside of the forward, off-door side (ODS) compartment door:**

**NOTICE**

For optimum performance, the Level-Up hydraulic system requires a fully charged RV auxiliary battery be properly connected to the RV. Failure to do so will result in non-warranty damage.

**LEVEL-UP COLD WEATHER OPERATION**

When operating in temperatures below 30° F, inconsistent performance may occur in the auto retract mode. The combination of low battery and low temps may cause the system to turn off before the jacks are fully retracted. If this should happen, operate the system in the manual mode to get the jacks to fully retract.

When operating in any mode and under all conditions, ALWAYS check to see if the jacks are fully retracted before starting to travel.

To unlock the touchpad:

Press and release the ▲ “up” and ▼ “down” buttons simultaneously and the green indicator LED will turn on.

**Red / Green Status Indicator**

See below chart for descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LED Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Touchpad is locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Green</td>
<td>Touchpad is active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blinking Green</td>
<td>Jacks are moving, and/or pump is active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Red</td>
<td>Low battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blinking Red</td>
<td>Fault (Consult the OneControl Touch Panel/App for instructions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blinking Red/Green</td>
<td>Jack Fault. Hold “RETRACT ALL” button to begin Auto Retract/ Clear fault</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The touchpad will remain on as long as the user is pressing buttons and will timeout after several minutes without use.

**Front Jack Control**

- ▲ Button: Raises the front of the trailer (extends the jack/s)
- ▼ Button: Lowers the front of the trailer (retracts the jack/s)

**Auto Buttons**

- **Auto Level**: Initiates auto level sequence
- **Hitch Height**: Initiates the smart hitch feature
- **Retract All**: Initiates full retract of all jacks

**Travel Trailer: Tongue Jack**

**Fifth Wheel: Landing Gear**
Control Panel Instructions

DROPPING OFF UNIT
1. Park coach on level ground.
2. Chock all tires.
3. Make sure battery power is on.
4. Release front jack legs by pulling out quick release pin.

NOTE: Before proceeding, ensure that the quick release pin is fully re-engaged once the drop legs are set in place.

5. At this point, you may use automatic controls on your Linc™ remote if supplied. If no Linc remote supplied, continue to 6. IMPORTANT: For Linc™ automatic leveling and retraction instructions, refer to your owner’s packet.
6. Press “ON/OFF” button to turn panel on (E).
7. Push “DOWN ARROW” button and scroll to “DROP FRONT JACKS” option on LCD screen (A).
8. Push “ENTER” button (B). Front legs will lower to ground and stop.
9. Disconnect 5th wheel latch.
10. Push “FRONT” button (F) to extend front landing gear jacks manually and lift front of vehicle to clear 5th wheel plate.
11. Pull tow vehicle away and park at a safe distance.
12. Push “AUTO LEVEL” button (C). The unit will commence auto-level feature by setting front landing gear jacks to level, then dropping rear jacks, followed by a leveling sequence check.

NOTE: If this unit is equipped with a 6-point system, the two middle jacks will be grounded to stabilize the unit. These two jacks do not level the unit.

NOTE: When auto-level sequence is complete, LCD screen will indicate, “LEVEL SUCCESSFUL.” “LEVEL, JACKS DOWN” will then appear, along with a green light in the middle of the jack buttons.

13. Press the “ON/OFF” button to turn system off (E).

RECONNECTING TO TOW VEHICLE
1. If supplied with a Linc™ remote, refer to your owner’s packet. Otherwise, continue to step 2.
2. Press “ON/OFF” button to turn panel on (E).
3. Push “LEFT” and “RIGHT” buttons together (D). Rear jacks will retract. Then front jacks will return to previous drop-off height.
4. Back tow vehicle to align 5th wheel hitch.
5. Push the “DOWN ARROW” (A) until “AUTO RETRACT ALL” is displayed and push the “ENTER” button (B).
6. After auto-retract sequence is complete, raise and secure front jack legs with quick release pull pins.
7. Press the “ON/OFF” button to turn system off (E).
Prior to operation

1. The trailer is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. Make sure that all persons, pets, and property stay clear of the trailer while the leveling system is in operation.
3. Make sure battery(ies) are fully charged and test at least 12 VDC under load.

**Ground Control 3.0 Touchpad**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Callout</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Up Arrow - Scrolls up through the menu on LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Down Arrow - Scrolls down through the menu on LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Enter - Activates modes and procedures indicated on LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Retract - Places leveling system into retract mode. Press and hold down for 1 second to initiate Auto Retract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>LCD Display - Displays procedures and results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Auto Level - Places leveling system into auto level mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Front Jack Button - Activates front jacks in manual mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Left Jack Button - Activates left jacks in manual mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Right Jack Button - Activates right jacks in manual mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Rear Jack Button - Activates rear jacks in manual mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Power Button - Turns leveling system on and off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Failure to act in accordance with the following may result in death or serious personal injury. The use of the Ground Control® 3.0 leveling system to support the trailer for any reason other than which it is intended is prohibited by Lippert’s limited warranty.

The Lippert leveling system is designed as a leveling system only and should NOT be used to provide service for any reason under the trailer such as changing tires or servicing the leveling system.

Any attempts to change tires or perform other service while trailer is supported by the Ground Control® 3.0 leveling system could result in death, serious injury or damage to the 5th wheel.

**WARNING**

DO NOT exceed GVWR or severe damage to product or property may occur.

**CAUTION**

Moving parts can Pinch, Crush or Cut. Keep clear and use caution.
**Basic jack operation**

Landing gear (or front jacks) can be operated any time the system is ON. By pushing the FRONT button (Fig. 1G), both front jacks can be extended. By pushing either the FRONT and LEFT (Fig. 1H) or FRONT and RIGHT (Fig. 1I) buttons, the individual front jacks can be extended. If the touch pad is put in the retract mode, indicated by the orange illuminated LED next to the RETRACT button (Fig. 1D), the front jacks can be retracted together by pushing the FRONT button (Fig. 1G) or individually by pressing LEFT (Fig. 1H) or RIGHT (Fig. 1I) buttons, while simultaneously pressing the FRONT button (Fig. 1G).

Middle jacks (if so equipped) can not be extended or retracted in standard mode or manual mode. Middle jacks can only be operated in the special jack code error mode. In order to operate the middle jacks press LEFT (Fig. 1H) and RIGHT (FIG. 1I) buttons simultaneously.

The rear jacks can only be extended when the touch pad is in the manual mode. Once system is in manual mode, pressing the REAR button (Fig. 1J) will extend both rear jacks at the same time. To extend individual rear jacks, press the LEFT (Fig. 1H) or RIGHT (Fig. 1I) buttons while simultaneously pressing the REAR button (Fig. 1J), depending on which jack needs to be operated.

If the touch pad is put in the retract mode, indicated by the orange illuminated LED next to the RETRACT button (Fig. 1D), the rear jacks can be retracted together by pushing the REAR button (Fig. 1J) or individually by pressing either the LEFT (Fig. 1H) or RIGHT (Fig. 1I) buttons, while simultaneously pressing the REAR button (Fig. 1J).

**NOTE:** If the rear jacks will not operate individually using the method described above, but they do operate properly when Auto Level is performed, the Twist Prevention Protection System has locked out the operation to prevent damage to the frame of the trailer.

---

**WARNING**

Be sure to park the trailer on solid, level ground. Clear all jack landing locations of debris and obstructions. Locations should also be free of depressions.

When parking the trailer on extremely soft surfaces, utilize load distribution pads under each jack. People and pets should be clear of the trailer while operating leveling system.

Never lift the trailer completely off the ground. Lifting the trailer so the wheels are not touching the ground will create an unstable and unsafe condition.
Unhitching from a Tow Vehicle

**NOTE:** Prior to unhitching from the tow vehicle, check that your trailer is parked on a level surface, *then* chock the tires of the trailer.

1. Disconnect the 7-Way Plug and the Breakaway Switch Lanyard (cable).

2. Extend the inner legs of both landing gear (front jacks) to show no more than 6 pin holes by pulling on the quick-release pins. Make sure pin is FULLY re-engaged.

3. Push ON/OFF (Fig. 1K). The LCD Screen will light up and display “READY Jacks: Up” (Fig. 2A).

4. Push the UP arrow (Fig. 1A) to scroll to “Drop Front Jacks” option on LCD screen.

5. Red indicator lights (Fig. 2B) may come on, indicating the current disposition of the trailer. In this case, the front and right sides of the trailer are low.

6. Push ENTER button (Fig. 1C). Both front jacks will go to the ground and stop.

7. Push the FRONT button (Fig. 1G) extending the front jacks to a sufficient height, which raises the front of the trailer off of the tow vehicle’s 5th wheel hitch plate. Be sure to pull the hitch release lever.

8. Pull tow vehicle away and park at a safe distance.
Auto Level

- After unhitching from tow vehicle and parking the vehicle at a safe distance away from the trailer, press the **ON/OFF** button and then press **AUTO LEVEL** (Fig. 1F).

**NOTE:** Once the automatic leveling cycle has been started, it is important that there is no movement in the trailer until the trailer has completed the leveling process. Failure to remain still during the leveling cycle could have an effect on the performance of the leveling system.

**NOTE:** In order for hitch recognition feature to function, the auto level sequence MUST be started with the front of the trailer above level.

**Auto Level Sequence**

1. When Auto Level Sequence begins, the front of the trailer will lower slightly to a point below level.
2. Rear jacks will be grounded.
3. A side to side leveling sequence occurs.

**NOTE:** At this point on the 6 point system (if equipped), the two (2) middle jacks are grounded to stabilize the trailer. These two (2) jacks DO NOT level the trailer.

4. Each jack will perform a final grounding touch.
5. LCD will read “AUTO LEVEL SUCCESS” (Fig. 3).
6. LCD will then read “READY Jacks: Down” (Fig. 4A), and the green LED at the center of the jack buttons will be illuminated (Fig. 4B).
Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System, Continued (Equipped on G-Class)

**Note:** If the **AUTO LEVEL** sequence does not perform as described, place the system in manual mode and test that the jacks operate correctly by pushing their coordinating buttons on the touch pad; ie. the **FRONT** button operates only the front jacks, etc.

**Hitch Recognition**

1. Turn on the touch pad.
2. Push the **UP** arrow (Fig. 5A) to scroll to **Auto Reconnect** option on LCD screen.
3. Push **ENTER** (Fig. 5B). The rear jacks and middle jacks (if equipped) will retract first, then the front jacks will extend to raise the trailer to the height where the auto level sequence was started.

**NOTE:** If the auto level sequence was started with the front of the trailer in a below-level condition, the Hitch Recognition will not function and the LCD will display **Feature Disabled**.

- In order for the Hitch Recognition feature to function, the auto level sequence **MUST** be started with the front of the trailer above level.

Once the RV is stabilized, continue setting up the RV. Connect to the site facilities, extend the slideouts & awning, etc. There is no particular order to these set up procedures. With practice you will find the order that is the most efficient for your needs.

**Preventive Maintenance**

1. For optimum performance, the system requires full battery current and voltage. The battery **MUST** be maintained at full capacity.
2. Check the terminals and other connections at the battery, the controller, and the jacks for corrosion and loose or damaged connections.
3. Remove dirt and road debris from jacks as needed.
4. Leveling legs that stay in the extended position for long periods require protection from the elements.
   - Spray the exposed landing gear rod with a silicone lubricant every every three (3) months.
   - If your RV is located in a salty environment, spray the rods with a silicone lubricant every four to six (4-6) weeks.

**WARNING**

Ensure the trailer is supported at both the front and rear with jack stands before performing any troubleshooting or service to the trailer. Failure to do so may result in death or personal injury.
The ONEControl® Touch Panel provides system controls and monitoring software for your Momentum Fifth Wheel.

**Operation**

1. Locate your ONEControl® Touch Panel.

2. **Power On/Off** – The touchscreen can be powered ON or OFF using the button on the front of the device’s lower frame. Start up will take a few moments as the system loads.

3. To enter or exit *Sleep Mode*, PRESS and RELEASE the power button again.

4. **TOUCH** the icon of the system you wish to operate. *(See following page)*

5. **TOUCH** the shaded boxes to access LCI Owner’s Manuals, How To & Troubleshooting Videos, or “Control Panel” to return to the functions available on your unit.
6. **Awning** – **TOUCH** the circles labeled **RETRACT** or **EXTEND**.

7. **Slides** – **TOUCH** the circles labeled **IN** or **OUT** for the selected slidout.

8. **Lighting** – **TOUCH** the highlighted box **ON** or **OFF** for each selected light.

9. **Generator** – **TOUCH** the circle labeled **START** or **OFF**.

10. **Leveling** – **TOUCH** **AUTO LEVEL**, or **TOUCH** the up or down ARROWS & ENTER, to select mode, **Then TOUCH** the circles labeled **RETRACT** or **EXTEND**.

11. **Monitor Panel** – Shows the fill level status for each selected tank. 
**TOUCH** the labeled box on Right Hand side of the screen to turn **ON** or **OFF** the Gas or Electric Water Heater & Water Pump. *(Also See page 106)*
Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is equipped with two independent electrical systems. One system is 120-volt 60hz AC power, the other system is 12-volt DC power. The electrical equipment and associated circuitry are engineered into a dedicated system specific to your RV. All installations meet or exceed industry standards applicable on the date of manufacture.

- A hazardous condition may result from changes or additions to RV electrical system made after delivery.
- Adding fixed appliances or making unauthorized changes is NOT recommended.
- ONLY a qualified electrical technician should perform service or modifications on the RV electrical system.

The methods, components, and materials used MUST be in compliance with current safety and code requirements. Please consult your dealer’s service department for assistance.

**Electrical System Maintenance**

- ALWAYS disconnect the negative 12-volt DC battery terminal and the shore power cord BEFORE working on the electrical system.
- ALWAYS turn OFF the power converter, BEFORE disconnecting the battery.

For more information on your RV’s electrical system, See the component manuals in your Owner Information Package.

**50-Amp Power Cord**

The power cord (or **shore power cord**) connects your RV to an external power receptacle. This heavy duty cord has a dual purpose. **When connected, it will:**

- CARRY VOLTAGE & CURRENT to your RV from the external power receptacle, and
- GROUND the electrical system of your RV through the external power receptacle.

**BEFORE connecting your power cord, ALWAYS:**

- TEST the external power receptacle or electrical box with a **Line Monitor/Outlet Tester** (customer supplied).
- DO NOT connect the power cord if the **Line Monitor** indicates REVERSE POLARITY or an OPEN GROUND.
50-Amp Power Cord, Continued

Connecting the power cord
1. Turn OFF the load center main 120-volt circuit breaker.
2. Carefully extend the entire length of the power cord from the electric cable hatch to the external power source.
3. Plug the power cord into the receptacle. Make sure that all of the power cord prongs are properly seated into the receptacle.
4. Return to your RV and turn ON the load center main circuit breaker.
5. To help prevent power surges from damaging the connected loads, please follow these instructions when hooking up to the external power source:
   a. Unplug the shore power cord when the RV is left unattended. This may help limit potential damage in the event of a power surge.
   b. Use care to prevent damaging the connection pins when connecting or disconnecting the power cord.
   c. Reverse the Connecting the power cord steps (1-5) listed above, when you are ready to leave.
6. ALWAYS disconnect the power cord from the outlet by the plug; NEVER disconnect the plug by pulling the cord.

Power cord maintenance
- Frequently INSPECT the power cord for cuts, cracks, and worn insulation.
- REPLACE cord immediately if any of these symptoms are found.

120-Volt AC System
Your Momentum FW is equipped with a 50 amp electrical system.
- The 50 amp 120 volt 60hz AC electrical system is designed to operate on two (2) legs of 120-volt power at a maximum current flow of 50 amperes per leg.

WARNING
- DO NOT hook up the power cord to any receptacle until you have verified proper polarity and grounding. Polarity indicators can be purchased in most electrical and hardware stores.
- DO NOT use any cheater plug, adapter or extension cord to reconfigure incoming AC power or break the continuity of the circuit connected to the grounding pin.
- DO NOT connect the power cord into an outlet that is not grounded, or adapt the power cord plug to connect it to a receptacle for which it is not designed.
- DO NOT remove the grounding pin to connect to a non-grounded receptacle. Removal of the ground pin disables an important safety feature designed to prevent electrocution and shock hazards.
- DO NOT connect the power cord to an extension cord. Use of an improper extension cord will cause overheating of the cord as well as potentially causing premature failure of the AC equipment.
- It is the responsibility of the electrical receptacle owner to ensure that it is properly wired and grounded.
- Reverse Polarity and/or Improper Grounding of your RV can cause personal injury or death.
Power to your 50 amp, 120-volt 60hz AC electrical system can be supplied by the 120-volt 60hz utilities found at RV campgrounds or by a generator. A campground’s electrical service may occasionally experience high or low voltage.

- Exposure to voltages higher or lower than 120-volts will damage or shorten the service life of the electrical system and appliances.

The following electrical components (if so equipped) will operate ONLY when your RV is connected to shore power: 120-volt to 12-volt power converter, air conditioner, 120-volt refrigerator, microwave oven, television(s), fireplace, and other appliances that plug into convenience electrical receptacles.

For recommendations on power-surge protection, Consult your dealer.

120-Volt Circuit Breakers

The 120-volt AC circuit breakers are located in the main load center. They protect all of the 120-volt wiring and components. Each circuit is identified on a label inside the load center.

- An overload or short circuit will cause the breaker to trip, stopping the flow of electricity for the affected circuit.

- If a circuit breaker trips, turn OFF the appliance on that circuit. Allow some time for the circuit breaker to cool.

- To RESET the circuit breaker, flip the switch to the OFF position, then flip it back to the ON position.

- If a breaker immediately trips again or trips frequently, contact your dealer to diagnose and repair the problem.

Maintenance and replacement

Circuit breaker switches can wear out. Test the breakers annually, at the beginning of the camping season. Replace them as needed, during normal maintenance.

- To TEST: Flip each breaker switch to the OFF position, then back to the ON position.

For further information, Contact your dealer.
Converter

The Power Converter changes 120-volt AC power to usable 12-volt DC power when the shore power cord is connected to an external power source. A thermal breaker is built-in to the converter to protect it from overheating.

**Overheating** is usually caused by the converter operating above its maximum power output for an extended time period, or with too little air flow.

- To reduce converter heat, DO NOT run any unnecessary 12-volt lights/motors/appliances, and
- Keep the converter cooling fins and fan clear of obstructions.

**Inspection and maintenance**

If the 12-volt power converter is NOT working, or the auxiliary battery is not being charged:

1. Locate the converter fuse panel on one end of the converter.
2. Check the reverse polarity fuse or fuses.

The manufacturer’s warranty will be void if the case has been removed. There are no customer serviceable parts inside.

*For further information, Contact your dealer.*

**GFCI Receptacle**

Grounding is your personal protection from electrical shock. Each RV has a ground fault current interrupter (GFCI) engineered into the electrical system. This device has been designed to reduce the possible injury caused by electric shock. The GFCI will not protect against short circuits or circuit overloads.

- A *tripped* GFCI receptacle indicates that abnormally high 120-volt current flow (a ground fault) was detected through the electrical system grounding circuit.

A fault condition can be caused by faulty wire insulation, wet wiring inside an appliance, or faulty electrical equipment connected to the circuit, etc. All ground faults must be repaired before use of the RV.
Test all GFCI receptacles monthly

• **Push in** the _TEST_ button. This should **pop out** the _RESET_ button, indicating the GFCI receptacle has been **tripped**. This will interrupt 120-volt power.

• **Push in** the _RESET_ button. This should restore 120-volt power.

_Contact your dealer for assistance, if the RESET button does NOT restore 120-volt power or trips repeatedly._

### 12-Volt DC System

Many of your RV components including the light fixtures, water pump, motors and appliances run on 12-volt electricity.

• The **Converter** supplies 12-volt power when your RV is connected to external power. The converter will also charge the Auxiliary Battery in most situations.

• The **Auxiliary Battery** supplies 12-volt power when your RV is NOT connected to external power.

• The **Tow Vehicle Alternator** supplies 12-volt power when the _7-Way Wire Harness_ is connected, and the tow vehicle engine is running.

  This runs the components needed for travel including, the brake lights, turn signals, brakes, running lights and the breakaway switch. In addition, the _7-Way Wire Harness_ provides a common ground and a charge line to your auxiliary battery.

### 12-Volt DC Outlet (If So Equipped)

Your RV may include a 12-volt DC outlet (not applicable on all models). ONLY use this outlet for an appliance that runs on 12-volt DC power and consumes less than 60 watts (5 amps).

• **To prevent a short circuit, keep the 12-volt DC outlet free of any (metallic) foreign material.**
12-Volt Fuse Panel

- The label inside the 12-volt fuse panel indicates the fuse sizes, positions and components powered. The fuse panel label should be kept permanently affixed to your RV.
- Inspect all 12-volt fuses at the beginning of each camping season, and replace as needed.
- The fuses may not offer complete protection of the RV electrical system in the event of a power surge or spike.

Replacing a fuse
BEFORE replacing a fuse, ALWAYS turn OFF or UNPLUG the component(s) it protects.

1. Disconnect the shore power cord.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the RV auxiliary battery.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover to check fuses.
4. Pull the fuse straight out of the fuse block.
   - If the fuse is not blown, please contact your dealer to determine the cause of the problem.
5. ALWAYS replace with a new fuse of the same specified voltage, amperage rating and type in the original location.
   - NEVER use a higher rated replacement fuse.

Auxiliary Battery

Your RV has many 12-volt DC loads. When combined, their total is more than the converter can produce. High demands for 12-volt power can be met by an auxiliary battery for limited periods of time. The 12-volt DC electrical system is designed for use with a Group 24 or Group 27 deep cycle battery.

Dry camping
Consider the charge condition of the auxiliary battery when dry camping. If the RV is drawing power solely from the auxiliary battery without recharging, it will become depleted. As the battery’s charge becomes lower, it will also discharge at a faster rate. It is recommended you plan your electrical usage accordingly.
For accuracy, test the auxiliary battery voltage using a volt-ohm meter. A fully charged auxiliary battery will read 12.7 volts DC and 1.265 specific gravity at 80°F (32°C).

The auxiliary battery is considered discharged at 11.8 volts, and dead at 11.65 volts. When voltage drops below those levels, permanent damage may occur. Typically, a deep cycle battery has an amp-hour rating of 75-100 amps.

If the furnace and refrigerator are operating simultaneously, approximately (12.0 + 3.0) 15.0 amps per hour are used. This does not include any 12-volt lights, water pump or any other 12-volt component.

In the above example, if the furnace and refrigerator operated constantly, a 75 amp-hour battery would become fully discharged in 5 hours (75ah /15a = 5h).

The RV’s auxiliary battery should be installed in parallel with the battery in your tow vehicle. When the 7-way trailer plug is connected, both batteries power the RV.

- **It is very important NOT to discharge your tow vehicle battery below the level required to start the engine.**

To prevent this from occurring, disconnect the 7-way trailer plug or install a *Battery Isolator* (customer supplied). When the tow vehicle engine is operating with the RV connected, the tow vehicle charging system will charge both batteries.

**Replacement and maintenance**

Some equipment in your RV will draw small amounts of current even when turned OFF. To prevent the auxiliary battery from being discharged when your RV is not connected to shore line power, disconnect the auxiliary battery negative cable at the battery. During storage, it is important to check the voltage monthly and recharge the auxiliary battery as needed. If you remove the auxiliary battery from your RV, store it in a dry, cool area per the manufacturer’s instructions.

When it is time to replace the auxiliary battery, replace it with a Group 24 or Group 27 deep cycle battery only. Contact the battery manufacturer for further information. DO NOT reverse the positive and negative battery cables (doing so will blow the reverse polarity fuse(s) that protect the converter).
Battery Disconnect Switch

The Battery Disconnect Switch (see photo) is located in the large, forward, pass-thru compartment. At times when auxiliary power will NOT be needed:

• TURN the Battery Disconnect Switch to the OFF position and REMOVE key.

• All 12-Volt safety items will remain operational.

When you are ready to use your RV’s interior features:

• REPLACE key, and TURN the Battery Disconnect Switch to the ON position.

If the RV will be in STORAGE: Also DISCONNECT the battery cables from the auxiliary battery terminals. See page 190, Winterizing/RV Storage Preparation #12.

Calculating Electrical Load

While connected to external power and using appliances, remember that the 120-volt electrical system can run a maximum of 100 amps. If you overload the RV and/or camp-ground electrical system, a circuit breaker trip may occur.

• Added together, the amperage of each appliance and component running at the same time, must NOT exceed 100 amps.

To calculate the amperage rating for each individual appliance, divide the wattage by the voltage (both should be listed on the appliance). For example: 1200 watts divided by 120 volts equals 10 amps.

See the Next Page, Approximate Electrical Load Ratings.

Replacing Light Bulbs (Customer Supplied)

• BEFORE replacing a bulb, turn OFF the light switch.

• Using the wrong bulb can overload the lamp circuit and overheat the fixture, creating a FIRE HAZARD.
  ◦ CHECK that your replacement bulbs match the type, wattage and voltage listed on the lamp fixture.
Approximate Electrical Load Ratings

Use the actual amperage of the appliance when possible. (Watts ÷ Volts)

### 120 Volt System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appliance</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner</td>
<td>14-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee Maker</td>
<td>6-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converter (Each)</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curling Iron or Hair Dryer</td>
<td>10-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD / Blu-ray System</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microwave</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satellite Receiver</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum Cleaner</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer / Dryer</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 12 Volt System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appliance</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aisle Lights</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage Compartment Lights</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decorative Wall Lights</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinette Light</td>
<td>0.5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Entertainment Center</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fantastic Fan</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3” LED Puck Lights (Each)</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furnace</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator Start</td>
<td>95 amps*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illuminated Switch</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverter</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leveling System</td>
<td>95 amps*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP Detector</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Light</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porch Light</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Awning</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Vent</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower Light</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Cover</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Plate / Antenna Booster</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity Light</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Pump</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Momentary load
Electric Systems

Inverter - 2000 Watts

Your Momentum FW, if so equipped, has a 2000 watt inverter mounted on the ceiling of the front compartment, See photo A, upper left. Please read the entire manufacturer owner’s manual found in your Owner Information Package for detailed operating instructions and safety warnings BEFORE using the inverter.

When properly connected to the RV battery (or batteries) and turned ON, the inverter transforms the direct current (DC) from the batteries into a pure sine wave alternating current (AC). This AC is similar to the voltage provided by your utility and is used to power any electrical appliances (i.e., AC loads) connected to the inverter’s output.

• **Switch the 2nd Battery Disconnect to the OFF position when the inverter is NOT needed.** See photo B, left.

• **Remember that the 2000 watt inverter can ONLY run a maximum of approximately 16.4 amps.** See the Previous Page, Approximate Electrical Load Ratings.

**Power/Select Button** - is used to turn ON & turn OFF the inverter. A Remote Switch for the inverter is found inside the door-side, forward storage compartment. See photo B, left & photo C, next page.

  • To turn ON the unit, PRESS and HOLD the button for one (1) second until you hear a “beep”.

  The digital display alternately shows the unit’s measured battery voltage and AC output power, and the status indicator lights green.

  • PRESS the Power/Select Button to turn OFF the unit.

**Status Indicator** - Three (3) different colors are used to indicate the inverter’s status:

  • **Green** - The inverter is operating normally.

  • **Amber** - A warning has been detected. The inverter will shut down at any time. Check the error code on the digital display.

  • **Red** - An error has been detected and the unit has shut down. Check the error code on the digital display.

**USB loads** - When using the USB connector, be sure that the device you will be connecting will accept 5 volts (<2.1 amps) and can be charged or powered using another power source. Some devices may NOT work and may even be damaged. Refer to the owner’s guide for each device to determine its compatibility.

**Loads turning OFF and ON**

  • If a load starts but quickly turns off, then the battery bank may NOT be able to deliver the necessary amperage to drive the load.

  • If this occurs, the inverter will shut OFF due to low voltage (<10.5 VDC).
The inverter may not be able to start some appliances, particularly pumps and refrigerators even though their rated current draw is within the inverter’s limits.

If a load does NOT start

- Observe the VOLTS indicator on the digital display while you are trying to start the appliance.

- If the display shows a battery drop below 11 volts while the inverter is trying to start the motor, this may explain why the appliance won’t run.

Running several loads at once - Sometimes the total surge requirement of all the loads is higher than the inverter can deliver. You may want to turn ON each one individually to ensure that the inverter does not have to deliver the starting current for all the loads at once.

Inverter Maintenance - Performing routine maintenance on the inverter and any connected batteries can ensure your energy system remains in optimum operational condition. Routine maintenance is required to keep the inverter operating properly.

Periodically you should:

- Clean the exterior of the unit with a damp cloth to prevent the accumulation of dust and dirt.

- Tighten the screws on the DC input terminals.

For battery recommendations and any further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Solar Docking Port

The Solar Docking Port is standard equipment, installed on the roof of your RV. It is designed for use with either an OEM or customer supplied Solar Power Charging System.

Solar Power Charging System (If So Equipped)

The Solar Power Charging System efficiently charges your RV battery (or batteries) by converting the energy from roof mounted solar panels to 12 Volt DC.

The MPPT Solar Charge Controller also protects your battery (or batteries) from overcharging by limiting the current flow from your solar array once they are fully charged. The Remote Display gives access to solar and battery status information, and allows the user to vary some operating settings of the Solar Charge Controller unit.
Generator Prep

Generator prep means that your RV includes the basic wiring needed to install an aftermarket generator (customer supplied). RV generators are built in compliance with specific codes and standards. **Your RV is designed to ONLY use generators built specifically for RVs.**

*When you are ready to purchase an aftermarket generator, consult your dealer for purchasing and installation assistance.*

Generator (If So Equipped)

The generator (if so equipped) will produce 120-volt AC power for use when camping in areas where shore power is unavailable. It can be controlled both at the generator itself or inside the RV on the ONEControl® Touch Panel or the Command Center on the G-Class. The power to start the generator comes from the auxiliary battery (customer supplied).

- **The generator runs on gasoline and gives off Carbon Monoxide.** See page 37, Carbon Monoxide.
- **TEST the Carbon Monoxide Detector every time that you use the RV.** See page 38, Combination CO/LP Alarm.

**WARNING**

**CARBON MONOXIDE IS DEADLY.**

The generator produces carbon monoxide while it is running. Carbon Monoxide is a colorless, tasteless and odorless gas. Test the carbon monoxide detector every time you use the RV (See this manual’s Occupant Safety Section).

**Be sure that you read and understand the generator manufacturer operator’s manual before operating the generator.**

**WARNING**

DO NOT block the generator ventilating air inlets or outlets. Restricting the ventilating air inlets or outlets can cause engine failure or fire from engine overheating.

**BEFORE starting the generator every time:**
- CHECK the fuel level in the fuel tank.
- CHECK the oil level.
- CHECK all fuel lines for fuel leaks.
- INSPECT generator for loose or damaged components and fasteners.
- INSPECT the generator exhaust system for damage or leaks.
- CORRECT any problems before operating the generator.
Safety Precautions & Warnings

• DO NOT operate the generator in an enclosed building or in a partly enclosed area such as a garage.

• DO NOT operate the generator if exhaust gases cannot be discharged away from the RV or other vehicles.

• DO NOT block the exhaust pipe. Make sure that exhaust gases are clear of walls, snow banks or any obstructions that can prevent exhaust gases from dissipating.

• DO NOT park the RV where exhaust gases can accumulate either outside, underneath or inside the RV or other vehicles.

• DO NOT operate the generator when the RV is parked in high grass or brush. *Heat from the exhaust could cause a fire in dry conditions.*

• DO NOT operate the generator when parked in close proximity to vegetation, snow, buildings, vehicles, or any other object that could deflect the exhaust under or into the vehicle.

• DO NOT simultaneously operate the generator and a powered ventilator which could result in the entry of exhaust gas.
  ◦ When exhaust ventilators are used, open a window on the opposite side of the RV upwind of exhaust gases to provide cross ventilation.
  ◦ *When you park, position the RV so that the wind will carry the exhaust AWAY from the RV.*

• DO NOT open nearby windows, ventilators, or doors into the passenger compartment, especially those downwind, even part of the time. Never operate your tow vehicle or generator engine longer than necessary when parked.

• DO NOT fill the fuel tank while the generator is running.
  ◦ *Fuel contact with a hot generator or exhaust is a FIRE HAZARD.*

• DO NOT smoke or have any open flame near the generator or fuel tank.

• DO NOT store anything in the generator compartment. ALWAYS keep the compartment clean and dry.

• DO NOT start the generator while a load is connected.
  ◦ BEFore starting, ALWAYS check that the main circuit breakers are turned OFF.
Generator, Continued

**Hour meter** - Indicates total generator operating time in hours and tenths of hours. Use the hour meter with the generator maintenance schedule for periodic maintenance.

**START/STOP Switch**
- If the Generator does not start from the ONEControl® Touch Panel. Access the main power switch behind the Generator’s front cover. (See photo, Left)
  - First, **PRIME** the motor by pressing the switch in the STOP/PRIME position.
  - HOLD until the light stops flashing. The motor is now primed.
  - **To START** the generator, PRESS and HOLD at the RUN position.
    - RELEASE the switch when the engine starts (the GEN RUN lamp will come on).
  - **To STOP** the generator, hold the switch at the STOP position until the engine stops.

**To START the Generator**
- SET the main circuit breakers to OFF.
- CONNECT the shoreline power cord to the shore power receptacle.
- PRESS and HOLD the START/STOP switch in the STOP/PRIME position at either control panel until the red light stops flashing; then
- HOLD the switch in the START position until the generator starts. The indicator light will remain on after the switch is released.
- **If the generator does not start**, RELEASE the switch.
  - Wait two minutes, then try again (priming first).
  - **If the 2nd try does not start the generator**, try to start using the START/STOP on the generator control panel.
  - If the indicator light still does not light, there may be an open in the remote wiring.
  - **If it still does not start**, Contact a service center for assistance.
- DO NOT turn ON the circuit breakers until the generator is running smoothly and has warmed up.
• CHECK that there are no fuel or exhaust leaks.

*To prevent the generator from overloading:* Turn OFF the individual circuit breakers, and set the main breakers ON. *Then, one at a time,* turn ON your individual circuit breakers.

**To STOP the Generator**

• TURN OFF the main breakers. Let the generator run for three to five (3-5) minutes to cool down.

• PRESS and HOLD the START/STOP switch to the STOP position until the generator stops completely and the indicator light goes out.
  ◦ If the switch is released before the generator stops and the light goes out, the generator will continue to run.

**Fuel Varnishing**

Fuel varnish is a gummy residue caused by the deterioration of fuel that can clog your generator’s carburetor and fuel pump. Depending on fuel quality and storage conditions, gasoline can deteriorate in as little as 30 days.

• To prevent fuel varnishing, add a fuel preservative to the fuel (gasoline) tank, exercise the generator regularly and refuel with fresh gasoline.

If you leave the same gasoline in the tank for several months, store your RV over the winter, or do not operate your generator engine often enough to refuel the gas tank every month, a fuel varnishing problem is very likely to develop.

*For more information, see the generator manufacturer’s operating and maintenance manual.*

**Maintenance**

• During long periods of in-operation or if the engine does not reach operating temperature, moisture can condense in the engine.
  ◦ This can cause damage to the engine and make starting difficult.

• Operate the generator with a 50% capacity load for two hours once a month.

• Running the generator long enough to reach normal operating temperatures is preferable to shorter running times.

*For additional service and maintenance information, please refer to the generator manufacturer’s user guide.*
This page is intentionally blank.
Plumbing Systems

There are two separate water systems equipped on your RV, the Fresh Water System and the Waste Water System.

- The Fresh Water System consists of the Fresh Water Holding Tank, Fresh Water Connections, Water Heater, Water Pump, Faucets, Shower/Tub, Outside Spray Port, and if so equipped, a Water Purification System.


BEFORE each trip or vehicle storage, and as part of normal maintenance, inspect the following for leaks:

- ALL fittings on BOTH water systems.
- ALL faucet and sink connections (including drain baskets or filters).
- ALL water pump and water heater connections.
- At the end of each trip, ALWAYS completely drain your fresh water system.

Fresh Water System - First Use

Your new RV may have been winterized, as indicated by temporary labels located in the universal docking station.

- BEFORE first use, the system should be Sanitized, even if it has NOT been Winterized.
- Sanitizing the fresh water system will kill all bacteria and organisms that can contaminate your water supply.

Small amounts of contaminants and minerals are found in ALL water. Sometimes, they can cause your fresh water to have an odor. Usually, untreated well water is the source of water system odors.

See page 112, Sanitizing the Fresh Water System.
The Monitor Panel is found on the ONEControl® System, See page 85-86.

- The Monitor Panel is found on the ONEControl® Touch Panel. The left hand side of this screen clearly displays the fill levels of your fresh, grey, and black water holding tanks.

- Each holding tank is equipped with a sensor to instantly relay the fill level to the display.

- The gas & electric water heater, water pump, and tank heater are listed on the right side of the screen.
  - TOUCH the appliance listed to turn ON, then
  - TOUCH again to turn OFF.

- You can scroll through each list by lightly dragging your fingertip up or down over the list.

- The current voltage of your auxiliary battery is displayed next to the battery icon.

- Electric water heater ON/OFF enables electric operation of the water heater.

- Gas water heater ON/OFF enables propane operation of the water heater.

- Water pump - When the water pump switch is turned ON, the water pump runs until 45 pounds of pressure has been achieved. When pump is not in use, Turn OFF the water pump.

- Water tank heater ON/OFF is used during cold weather to prevent the holding tanks from freezing.
Monitor Panel (Equipped on G-Class)

The monitor panel is found on the interior Command Center. It displays the fill levels of your fresh water, grey water, and black water holding tanks. It also shows the voltage of your auxiliary battery. To make a selection, PRESS and HOLD one of the labeled buttons on the monitor panel faceplate. Each holding tank is equipped with a sensor to instantly relay the fill level to the LED display. See photo (right) & diagram (below)

The monitor panel operates on 12-volt DC power supplied by either the converter or auxiliary battery. No power is drawn from the battery unless a button is pushed. Fuses for the monitor panel are located in the load center.

Operation

Press only one button at a time.

- When the FRESH, BLK, GRY1 or GRY2 button is pressed, the LED lights display the fill level of the selected holding tank.
- When the BATT button is pressed, the LED lights display the approximate voltage of your auxiliary battery.

Water pump switch

When the water pump switch is turned ON, the water pump runs until 45 pounds of pressure has been achieved.

- Turn OFF the water pump switch when water is not in use.

Water heater switch

The GAS water heater switch enables propane operation of the water heater. The ELECTRIC water heater switch enables electric operation of the water heater.

The red Command Center switches illuminate when in the ON position.
Water Heater

Read all safety and operating information provided here and in the manufacturer’s manual before attempting to activate the water heater. The water heater is designed to heat water quickly and efficiently. It’s temperature is preset by the manufacturer. Your RV’s water heater is turned ON & OFF on the Monitor Panel of the ONEControl® System. See page 86 & 104.

NEVER operate the Water Heater while empty. This can result in damage to the tank and/or controls that is NOT covered under the warranty.

• CHECK that the Water Heater is filled with water before use;
• ALWAYS open both the hot and cold water faucets when filling the fresh water tank to allow air pockets to be forced out of the water heater.

Draining and winterization

• If the RV will be stored over the winter, the Water Heater must be drained to prevent damage from FREEZING.
• When WINTERIZING, it is recommended to bypass the Water Heater and remove the Anode Rod, particularly if introducing RV antifreeze into the plumbing system.

Odor from the hot water system

The running water from some fresh water sources may have a rotten egg smell. This is known as sulfur water. The odor is caused by Hydrogen Sulfide gas (H₂S) in the water, usually the result of bacteria or chemical action. Generally, sulfur water is not harmful, only unpleasant to smell. Hydrogen Sulfide (rotten egg) odor is not a service problem.

See page 204, Basic Troubleshooting, Water Heater. Also refer to the water heater manufacturer’s owner manual for details on flushing to remove unpleasant odor.

High altitude deration

Your water heater is designed to work at elevations up to 4500 ft. above sea level. At higher altitudes there is less oxygen in the air. An inadequate supply of oxygen causes the air-fuel mixture to be out of sync, which compromises combustion and can produce Carbon Monoxide. At higher elevations, the water heater may require derating (a modification to compensate for the lack of oxygen in the air). If the water heater is not properly derated, poor efficiency in heating the water may occur due to incomplete combustion. You may also notice pilot outage caused by burner lift-off or sooting from a yellow burner, indicating the possibility of carbon monoxide.

For proper change out of the orifice (derating) consult with a local propane company, your dealer, or the water heater manufacturer.
Anode Rod Protection

The tank of your water heater is protected by a magnesium or aluminum Anode Rod. The rod absorbs the corrosive action of hot water to prolong the life of the tank. Through normal use, the anode rod will deteriorate. If water contains high levels of iron and/or sulfate, an anode rod will deteriorate faster; requiring more frequent replacement. The water heater manufacturer recommends that the anode rod be replaced annually or when consumption/weight loss is greater than 75%. See the photo at the bottom of the page.

Operating the water heater without the proper anode rod protection will decrease tank life and will void the manufacturer’s warranty. To extend the anode life, drain the water from the water heater tank whenever the RV is not being used. Avoid any extended time of non-use with water in the tank.

When replacing the anode rod, use a pipe thread sealant that is approved for potable water (such as Teflon Tape) on the threads of the anode rod to prevent a water leak. Proper application of a thread sealant will not interfere with the anode’s tank protection.

Pressure & Temperature Relief Valve

The Pressure and Temperature Relief Valve (P & T Valve) is a safety requirement for all water heaters. As cold water is heated, pressure in the water heater tank increases. The P & T Valve will release any unsafe pressure from the water heater tank.

It is normal for a small quantity of water to also be released from the P & T valve during the heating cycle. To reduce water dripping from the P & T relief valve:

- Maintain an air pocket at the top of the water heater. (refer to the manufacturer’s manual).
  - This air pocket forms in the tank by design.
  - Everyday use of your water heater will reduce this air pocket over time.

If the weeping persists, consult your dealer or a service agency authorized by the water heater manufacturer.

---

**WARNING**

Water temperatures over 125°F (49°C) can cause severe burns instantly or even death from scalds. Be careful when using hot water. Always test the water temperature before showering or washing.

**WARNING**

Do not replace any component part with an accessory part that is not authorized by the water heater manufacturer, such as an add-on electric heating element. Such items are not approved to be installed and could create an unsafe condition and will void all warranties.

---

**Exterior Water Heater Door**

(see photo below)

If the water heater does not work, make sure the power switch is in the ON position.
Plumbing Systems

Water Control System

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is equipped with a Nautilus P4 Water Control System. To understand the operation of your water control system, See page 119, Nautilus P4 User Instructions included in this manual.

Draining and winterizing

If the RV is to be stored over the winter months, the water heater must be drained to prevent damage from freezing. The water heater should also be drained and bypassed during the winterizing process particularly if introducing RV antifreeze into the plumbing system.

Fresh Water Holding Tank

The fresh water tank can be pressure filled using the fresh water inlet (called city water). Plastic overflow tubes are plumbed into the fresh water holding tank to allow water to flow out of the water tank. Occasionally, you may see water coming from the overflow tubes (located underneath the RV) when the fresh water holding tank is filled. This is normal, and is caused by external circumstances, including the RV being parked on an incline, or the motion caused by starting or stopping the RV during travel.

- DO NOT cap, block or modify the fresh water tank overflow tubes in any way.
- If the overflow tubes are obstructed, enough water pressure can build up during the filling process to damage the plumbing system.

12-Volt Water Pump

Once activated, the Water Pump (or on-demand pump) will self-prime, and provide water. The water pump continues to run until approximately 45 lbs. of pressure is achieved, then shuts off. The water pump will automatically restart when pressure drops. Some cycling may occur, depending on the volume of water being released. The water pump has a built-in check valve to prevent water from back flowing.

Water pump filter (if so equipped) is a screen filter located on the inlet side. This reusable screen must be cleaned periodically.

NOTICE

BE CAREFUL not to overfill the fresh water holding tank. This can pressurize the tank, causing leakage & water damage, and also void your warranty. DO NOT leave the tank unattended while filling.

NOTICE

The fresh water connection should be unplugged (i.e. the non-toxic drinking water hose disconnected) when the RV is left unattended for any amount of time. If something would happen to the water system, this may help limit water damage to a smaller area.

The Nautilus P4 System Is Located On The Forward Off-Door Side
Water Filter (If So Equipped)

For units equipped with a Water Filter at the Universal Docking Station, please follow all instructions found in the Owner’s Information Package and the Label on the Filter housing.

- For best results replace filter cartridge seasonally.
- See page 113, Additional Winterizing Instructions.

Water Pressure Regulator
(Customer Supplied)

In some RV parks (especially in mountain regions), excessive pressure from water supply systems may be encountered.

- A Water Pressure Regulator (available for purchase from your RV dealer) will help to protect your plumbing system against damage from a high pressure water supply.

Bathroom Shower

Unlike your home, the RV does not contain a water pressure balance valve. When the shower is in use, DO NOT run any other water until shower is finished. Air may need to be bled out of the plumbing lines before a steady stream of water flows.

1. Keep aware of the water heater and holding tank capacities. All water used, will drain through the plumbing lines into the grey water holding tank.
2. CHECK that the Water Heater is turned ON and has sufficient time to heat the water
3. If dry camping, TURN ON the 12-volt Water Pump.
4. Turn ON the hot and cold knobs, and adjust the water temperature before showering.
5. To conserve water while showering, wet down and turn OFF the water while using soap, then rinse.
6. When shower is finished, shut OFF the hot and cold knobs.

There is no shut-off valve for the showerhead; shut-off is at the hot and cold knobs only. After use, the showerhead may still drip slightly, even in the OFF position. This is normal and does not indicate a leak or defect.

Maintenance

Read the manufacturer’s operator manual. The shower walls in your RV are made of fiberglass. Use a mild detergent soap and warm water to clean. DO NOT use gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compound to clean the fiberglass.

**NOTICE**

Not using a Water Pressure Regulator when using city water may cause the o-rings to fail. To prevent damage to the plumbing system or components when using the city water connection, a Water Pressure Regulator rated for 40 lbs. is recommended.
Faucets

The faucets inside your RV operate much the same way as the faucets in your home.

- CHECK that the amount of water available is sufficient, and **If dry camping**, Turn ON the 12-volt Water Pump.
- To OPEN the faucets, turn ON the hot and cold knobs, then ADJUST the temperature to your comfort level.
- CLOSE the faucets when a sufficient amount of water is released.

Exterior Spray Port

A quick-connect spray port is found at the *Universal Docking Station* for washing / rinsing outside your RV.

**To use:**

1. ATTACH the supplied *Quick-Connect Hose and Sprayer* to your Spray Port.
2. CHECK that the *Water Heater* is turned ON and has sufficient time to heat the water.
   - **If dry camping**, TURN ON the 12-volt Water Pump.
3. TURN ON the hot and cold knobs, ADJUST the water temperature as desired.

**When finished:**

- TURN OFF the hot and cold knobs.
- DISCONNECT the quick connect hose and drain any excess water from the hose and sprayer nozzle.
Draining the Fresh Water System

The low-point drain valves release water in the supply lines by opening the valves and all faucets. The water heater has its own drain plug. To drain the permanent fresh water holding tank and supply lines:

1. OPEN all faucets, including the outside shower.
2. OPEN the Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve(s). This is the white T-handle located under the RV, close to the axles. Select models have more than one. See Photo, bottom right.
3. OPEN red and blue low point drain valves in the outside utility center.
4. DRAIN the sink by removing the drain cap.
5. Turn ON the water pump and allow it to run as needed.
6. Set the water heater bypass valve to Normal (horizontal).
7. ALWAYS use the water heater P & T Valve (Pressure and Temperature Valve) to relieve any water pressure, BEFORE removing the water heater drain plug.
   ◦ Even a small amount of water pressure may cause water to spray out when the drain plug is removed.
   ◦ See Photo, on page 107
8. REMOVE the water heater drain plug.

After draining the Fresh Water System, REVERSE these steps. Next, dump the grey and black water holding tanks at an appropriate facility according to local public codes. It is normal for a small amount of liquid to remain in the fresh water tank after draining is complete.
Sanitizing the Fresh Water System

Use the following procedures to sanitize your Fresh Water System (or Potable Water System) when it is new, becomes contaminated, or has not been used for a period of time.

- PREPARE a Chlorine Solution using one (1) gallon of water and one-quarter (1/4) cup of household bleach (5% Sodium Hypochlorite solution).

- PREPARE approximately one (1) gallon of solution for every fifteen (15) gallons of holding tank capacity.

**NOTE:** As an option, several commercial solutions are available, and should be used as directed on the package.

**To sanitize the fresh water tank & fresh water system:**
1. LEVEL the RV.
2. OPEN the Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve(s) and drain out any water in the tank. CLOSE the valve when drained.
3. CHECK that the Low Point Drain Valves are CLOSED.
4. Please refer to page 126-127, Nautilus P4 Manual, for detailed procedures and specific valve positions.
5. CONNECT a garden hose to the City Water Connection. **DO NOT use your fresh (potable) water hose.**
   - PLACE the other end of the hose into the container of *Chlorine Solution.* See Photo, left.
6. Turn ON the 12-volt Water Pump.
   - When the *Solution* container is empty, Turn OFF the pump.
7. Complete filling the tank with fresh water.
8. Operate ALL faucets to release trapped air, then Turn OFF the pump.
9. ALLOW the solution to stand for three (3) hours.
10. DRAIN tank and FLUSH the system with fresh water.

**To remove excessive chlorine odor or taste which may remain:**
11. PREPARE a Vinegar Solution of one (1) quart vinegar to five (5) gallons water and **repeat steps 3-10** above.
   - At step 5, place the other end of the hose into the container of *Vinegar Solution.* Allow solution to agitate in tank by intermittent vehicle motion (several days if possible).
Winterizing the Plumbing System

Preparing your RV for storage is very important in climates that experience cold weather. Follow the steps listed below at the end of the camping season.

- **ALWAYS winterize the fresh water system of your RV BEFORE exposure to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C).**
  - Damage to the water supply lines or water heater due to freezing is not covered under warranty.
- **Winterize with RV Antifreeze ONLY,** no other products should ever be added to your fresh water system.
  - Make sure to have enough RV antifreeze to winterize all fresh water lines. Several gallons may be required.
- **BEFORE Winterizing, the Black Water, Gray Water & Fresh Water plumbing systems MUST all be emptied.** See page 111 & page 116.

1. LEVEL the RV.
2. Turn OFF the Water Heater 12-volt and 120-volt interior control switches.
3. Please refer to page 130-132, Nautilus P4 User Instructions for detailed procedures and specific valve positions.
4. OPEN the Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve, and CLOSE both low point drains.
5. CONNECT a garden hose to the City Water Connection. **DO NOT use your fresh (potable) water hose.**
  - PLACE the other end of the hose into a container of RV Antifreeze.
6. PRIME the pump by filling the hose with RV antifreeze, then Turn ON the Water Pump.
7. OPEN the *hot* water line at each faucet. *(Kitchen, Lavatory, Shower and Outside Spray Port)*
  - CLOSE each *hot* water line faucet when RV antifreeze begins to flow continuously
8. REPEAT Step 7 with the *cold* water lines on all faucets. It is also important to run RV antifreeze through the Toilet, Sink and Shower Drains.

**When you are done adding RV antifreeze**

9. BLOW OUT the black tank flush line at the outside connection with compressed air (max 70 PSI).
10. **To prevent staining,** CLEAN any RV antifreeze from the sinks, shower (or tub), and toilet using a soft, dry cloth.
Black Water & Grey Water Systems

Your RV toilet drains into the Black Water (sewage) Holding Tank. The sinks and shower drain into the Grey Water (waste water) Holding Tank.

- ALWAYS empty the Black and Grey Water Holding Tanks BEFORE traveling to avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- If you are dry camping and cannot immediately empty your holding tanks, reduce your vehicle speed until you reach a dumping station.
- The Cargo Carrying Capacity of your RV is based on empty holding tanks. Any additional weight for the contents of your holding tank(s) reduces your Cargo Carrying Capacity by the same amount.

Traveling with your holding tank(s) full could result in the following conditions:
- Reduced available cargo capacity.
- Exceeding individual tire ratings and/or the GAWR or GVWR.
- Potential damage to suspension components, such as springs, tires and axles.
- Reduced hitch weight, if your RV holding tank(s) are located behind the axles.
- Trailer sway and other handling difficulties, as a result of the hitch weight being too light.

Toilet

Your RV toilet uses only one to three quarts (or 1-3 liters) of water per flush, about ten times less than a residential toilet. Additional water may be needed to flush solids from the drain line into the holding tank.

- ALWAYS continue to run water for an extra 10-15 seconds after flushing.
- NOT flushing with enough water, can result in clogged pipes or tanks.
To help prevent a toilet blockage:

• **Before use:** FLUSH the toilet several times, releasing enough water to cover the bottom of the holding tank.

• ALWAYS maintain four to six inches (10-15 cm) of water in the toilet for better performance.

• ALWAYS use RV grade, single-ply toilet paper.

• NEVER flush any foreign objects down the RV toilet (ie. hygiene products, cleaning wipes, paper towels, diapers).

**Cleaning and maintenance**

• CLEAN the toilet regularly.

• DO NOT use undiluted chlorine or caustic chemicals (ie. laundry bleach, chemical drain openers) in the RV toilet.
  ◦ These products will DAMAGE the seals in the toilet and dump valves.

• Applying petroleum jelly to a sticky toilet ball valve will provide waterproof lubrication without damaging the seals.

**Black & Grey Water Holding Tanks**

**Black water (sewage) tank preparation**

• Adding an RV holding tank deodorizer (customer supplied) will help break down tank contents and control odors.

**DO THE FOLLOWING**

• BEFORE the first use, **and** AFTER dumping the holding tanks **(unless you are winterizing your RV):**

  1. RELEASE one to two quarts (1-2 liters) of water into the toilet bowl.

  2. ADD the tank deodorizer (customer supplied) to your black water tank per the packaging instructions.

  3. FLUSH the toilet and allow at least two gallons (8 liters) of water to flow into the holding tank.

**Grey water (waste water) tank preparation**

No special preparation is required. If needed, control odors from the grey water system by adding a small quantity of baking soda or RV holding tank deodorizer down the sink or shower drain.
Emptying the Black & Grey Water Tanks

The Black Tank and Grey Tank Drain Valves (or dump valves) are located in the forward, off-door side compartment below the Nautilus P1 Water Control System.

- **ALWAYS** drain the black water holding tank **FIRST**.
- **THEN**, drain the grey tank waste water to help rinse any solids from the sewer outlet and hose.

1. Driving to a disposal site will normally loosen any accumulated waste solids from the sides of the holding tanks.
2. To make drainage easier, **LEVEL** the RV.
3. **LOCATE** the Sewer Outlet Connection,
   - REMOVE the sewer hose housing dust cap, and
   - ATTACH your sewer hose (customer supplied.)
4. Place the other end of the sewer hose into the approved dump station.
5. **OPEN** the Black Tank Dump Valve by carefully pulling it out towards you (CLOSE it by pushing it shut when the black water holding tank is emptied.)
6. **EMPTY** each grey water holding tank (one at a time)
   - OPEN the 1st Grey Tank dump valve
   - CLOSE the valve after the tank has drained.
   - REPEAT for the 2nd Grey Tank.
7. **REMOVE**, **CLEAN** and **STORE** the sewer hose.
8. **CLOSE** the sewer hose housing dust cap.

**When connected to a (campground) sewer drain**

- Keep the Black Tank Drain Valve CLOSED until the holding tank is at least ¾ full. This should provide enough water to completely drain the holding tank.
- **DO NOT** leave the Black Tank Drain in the OPEN position.
**Dump station locations**

Dump station locations throughout the United States and Canada can be found on many websites and publications including Woodall’s, Rand McNally Camp Guide, Good Sam Camp Guide, KOA Kampgrounds Camp Guide. Some gas stations also have dump stations.

*If you need assistance with the purchase or installation of a sewer hose or hose extension, Please contact your dealer.*

**Vents & Vent Pipes**

For the plumbing system to drain properly, the vents and vent pipes must release air from the grey and black water holding tanks. Always keep the exterior vent cap on the roof clear of any obstructions. In some models the vent pipe may be a *wet vent* allowing water to drain downward with air flowing upward in the same pipe.

**Drain Pipes With Dry Sealing Valve**

Your RV may be equipped with a dry sealing valve to prevent the escape of odors from your waste system and eliminate the need for P-traps. Should the RV drain piping system become clogged, a mechanical clean-out tool is used to open the drain pipe.

- **It is important to remove the dry valve before passing the clean-out tool through the piping.**
- **Passing a mechanical clean-out tool through the waterless valve may cause damage to the internal seal that may potentially allow sewer gases to escape to the RV interior.**

**Drain Pipes With P-Traps**

The drain pipes may be equipped with a *P-trap* installed to help prevent odors from escaping into the RV. During travel, water from the P-traps may spill and permit odors into the RV.

By adding water and using a RV approved deodorizing agent you will dissolve the contents faster and will keep the drain lines and tanks clean and free flowing. These chemicals are available at an RV supply store or your dealer.
Black Tank Flusher

The black tank flusher is designed to rinse the interior of the black (waste) tank. A separate water hookup is located in the docking station. Also see TANK FLUSH, pages 133-134, Nautilus P4 Manual.

To flush the tank after dumping:

1. Leave the sewer hose connected to the outlet pipe. Ensure that it is routed to the dump station inlet.

2. Attach a garden hose to the black hose connector in the outside utility center or on the off-door side of your RV. **DO NOT use your fresh water hose.**

3. Be sure the black tank gate valve is in the OPEN position.

4. Open the water supply to full pressure to flush the tank.

5. When the water runs clear from the sewer hose, shut OFF the water supply and disconnect the garden hose from the water source.

6. **DO NOT** disconnect the hose from flush inlet UNTIL all water has drained from the system.

**DO NOT** add any check valves to this system or leave any hose connected when not in use.
Nautilus P4 Manual

USER INSTRUCTIONS

www.bandbmolders.com
58471 Fir Road
Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: 574-259-7838
Fax: 574-259-7939
Congratulations on purchasing an RV equipped with the most advanced water management system available today! Be sure to read all Caution and User Instructions on the Nautilus Panel and in your Owner's Manual before performing any operation using the Nautilus Panel System.
NEVER push check valve on "CITY WATER" connection with pressure in line. This WILL cause irreparable damage to the check valve function.
The Nautilus P4 Panel System will allow you to perform the following functions:

1. Power fill your fresh water tank for remote or dry camping

2. Use your pump to supply water to fixtures from fresh water tank

3. Use your pump to siphon fill or sanitize your fresh water tank from a bucket

4. Connect to city water at the camping site to supply water to fixtures

5. Winterize your plumbing lines and fixtures

6. Bypass hot water heater when winterizing to avoid water heater damage

7. Rinse black tank to help control odors and prevent sewage buildup

8. Rinse off items outside unit with a hot/cold faucet

9. Connect up to three (3) coax lines with satellite, cable and auxiliary
### USER INSTRUCTIONS

#### Nautilus P4 Handle Position and Valve Routing Information

**WHITE HANDLE**: Receives water from the white handle valve/water inlet on front of panel

- Sideways - water goes to pump inlet
- Down – water goes into blue handled diverter

**BLUE HANDLE**: Receives water from the white handle valve/water inlet on front of panel

- Sideways - water goes to fixtures (cold)
- Down – water will go to or come from fresh water tank

**GREEN HANDLE**: Is an on/off flow through valve that feeds pump from fresh water tank

- Sideways - water will not flow through valve
- Up – water will go to or come from fresh water tank

**RED HANDLE**: Receives water from cold water supply line

- Sideways - water goes to hot water fixtures without going through hot water heater
- Up – water goes to hot water heater
1. For cable TV connection, connect the threaded coax from the source to the "CABLE" connection.

2. For satellite TV connection, connect the threaded coax from the satellite dish to the "SAT" connection.

3. Consult your Owner's Manual to see if the "AUX" connection has an application.
3. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.

4. Turn water supply on at source. Fresh water tank should begin to fill.

**NOTE:** Consult your Owner’s Manual for tank capacity. **DO NOT OVERFILL TANK!**

5. When desired level in fresh water tank is reached, turn water off at source.
6. Disconnect garden hose from inlet on Nautilus panel.
1. Connect garden hose to inlet labeled "CITY WATER."

2. Turn handles to "SANITIZE" position as shown.
   - **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing down.
   - **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing right.
   - **RED** diverter handle should be facing up.
   - **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

3. Place other end of hose in container holding water or sanitizing solution.

4. Push "PUMP" switch to turn pump on.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.
5. Pump should be running and fresh water tank should begin to fill.

**NOTE:** Consult your Owner's Manual for tank capacity. **DO NOT OVERFILL TANK!**

6. When desired level in fresh water tank is reached, push "PUMP" switch to turn pump off.

**NOTE:** LED indicator light below the pump switch will not be lit.

7. Disconnect garden hose from inlet on Nautilus panel.
1. Make sure fresh water tank has necessary supply of water.

2. Turn handles to "DRY CAMPING" position as shown.
   - **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
   - **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
   - **RED** diverter handle should be facing up
   - **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing up

3. Push "PUMP" switch to turn pump on.

   **NOTE:** LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.

4. Water should be available to all fixtures.

   **NOTE:** The pump will run when a plumbing fixture is open.

5. Make sure pump is turned off when not in use.
1. Connect garden to hose to inlet "CITY WATER."

2. Turn handles to "CITY WATER" position.
   - **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
   - **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
   - **RED** diverter handle should be facing up.
   - **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

3. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.

4. Open faucet at water supply source. Water should be available to all fixtures.

**NOTE:** Refer to OEM Owner's Manual for safe operating pressures.

Over pressurizing water lines may cause damage to plumbing lines and fixtures.
1. Turn handles to "POWERFILL" position as shown.
   • BLUE diverter handle should be facing down.
   • WHITE diverter handle should be facing down.
   • RED diverter handle should be facing up.
   • GREEN diverter handle should be facing left.

2. Open low point drain(s) on RV to remove water in plumbing lines. Open both a hot and cold faucet to help drainage process.

3. Open drain plug on hot water heater to drain water if unit is equipped with hot water holding tank.

**NOTE:** Contact your dealer or manufacturer for exact location of low point drains and hot water heater.

4. Once most water has been drained from plumbing lines, turn RED, BLUE, GREEN and WHITE handles so they are at a 45 degree angle as shown.
5. Using "CITY WATER" inlet or low point drain, blow out plumbing lines (40 PSI max) with handles still at 45 degree angle as shown. This will ensure any trapped water in plumbing harness is removed.

6. Close drains on hot water tank & low point drains.

7. Turn handles to "WINTERIZE" position as shown.
   - **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
   - **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing right.
   - **RED** diverter handle should be facing right.
   - **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

8. Connect a short section of garden hose to inlet labeled "CITY WATER."
9. Place other end of garden hose in container holding approved winterizing solution.

NOTE: A short or cut off section of garden hose should help the pump to prime easier.

10. Push "PUMP" switch to turn pump on.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.

11. Pump should be running and winterizing solution should begin to flow through pump into plumbing lines and fixtures.

NOTE: The pump will run when a plumbing fixture is open.

12. Open one plumbing fixture, keeping it open until winterization solution appears, then close.

13. Follow above procedure until all inside & outside plumbing fixtures have been winterized hot & cold sides of plumbing fixtures.

Important! Make sure to run winterizing solution through hot & cold lines on exterior shower.

14. Push "PUMP" switch to turn off pump.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will not be lit.

15. Disconnect garden hose from "CITY WATER" inlet.

NOTE: It is normal for some winterizing solution to be present as hose is being disconnected.
Rinsing the Waste Tank "TANK FLUSH"

1. Connect flexible sewer hose to 4" dump outlet on unit.

2. Open black waste holding tank valve and leave open to allow black tank to drain.

3. Attach a garden hose to inlet labeled "TANK FLUSH."

4. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.
5. Fully open faucet at water supply source (40 psi minimum). Flush tank until water appears clear in 4" discharge hose.

6. Completely close faucet at water supply source.

7. Disconnect garden hose from water source.

8. Disconnect garden hose from "TANK FLUSH" inlet


NOTE: To help ensure that debris does not clog tank sprayer orifices, use "TANK FLUSH" every time that the waste holding tank is emptied.
Propane System

The propane system includes the propane cylinders, propane regulator, hoses, piping and copper tubing lines to each gas appliance. Follow the manufacturer’s instructions for each propane appliance and all safety precautions.

Maintenance

Although both Grand Design RV and your selling dealer carefully test the propane system for leaks, travel vibrations can loosen fittings. Have the RV’s propane system checked at all connections soon after your purchase. System should also be checked when the propane tanks are filled for the first time, and again after 5,000 miles of travel.

Continue propane system checks by a qualified propane service representative (at least once per year) as part of your normal RV maintenance.

Propane Gas

In your RV, propane or LP (liquefied petroleum) is used by the stove, furnace, hot water heater and refrigerator.

- An unpleasant “sulfur or rotten egg” odor is added to propane as a warning agent. This smell will alert you to an LP gas leak that can create a safety hazard.

When a propane cylinder is low, there may be a different odor like onions or garlic, that may be mistaken for a gas leak. This odor will usually disappear when the cylinder is filled.

- If the odor persists, turn OFF the valve(s) and have the propane system inspected by your dealer or qualified propane service technician.

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE

1. Extinguish any open flames, pilot lights and all smoking materials.
2. Do not touch electrical switches.
3. Shut off the propane supply at the container valve(s) or propane supply connection.
4. Open doors and other ventilating openings.
5. Leave the area until odor clears.
6. Have the propane system checked and leakage source corrected before using again.

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN EXPLOSION
RESULTING IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY
Propane Gas Cylinders

While under pressure in the cylinder, propane gas is compressed into its liquid form. Propane will not run through the appliances in its liquid state. As the fuel is released from the cylinder to operate an appliance, it changes from liquid to gas.

- **IMPORTANT:** Propane expands 1½ percent for every ten degree increase in temperature.
- **Sufficient space MUST be left inside container for expansion of gas during warmer weather.**

Propane cylinders (also referred to as LP bottles) are used for the storage and delivery of propane gas. Propane cylinders are filled by weight, expressed in pounds. For filling, a qualified propane facility is required, and cylinders must be removed from the RV.

*When the propane system is not in use, the main shut off valve MUST be kept closed.* To close the propane cylinder main shut off valve: **HAND TIGHTEN ONLY, do not use tools. Over-tightening may damage the interior seals on the cylinder valve seat.** If this type of damage occurs, the cylinder valve WILL NOT close properly.

DOT (Dept. of Transportation) Cylinders are the most common for use on RV trailers. DOT cylinders equipped with an OPD and ACME TYPE 1 service valve are identified by the triangular service valve knob.

- **ALWAYS** close the service valve and install a dust cap or plug when transporting or storing disconnected containers whether full or empty.

DOT cylinders are typically marked with “top” or an arrow indicating the correct orientation of the cylinder(s).

- **ALWAYS** mount, store and transport the cylinder(s) in the position specified.
- **ALWAYS** securely re-install DOT cylinder(s) to the RV after they have been removed for filling or replacement.

The cylinders are equipped with an Over-fill Protection Device (OPD) designed to reduce the potential of overfilling. They are also equipped with an ACME service valve that is for connection of the TYPE 1 ACME pigtail hose assembly to the RV two-stage regulator. The TYPE 1 ACME pigtail hose assembly is a wrenchless, user friendly, right hand threaded connector that features a thermally sensitive sleeve and excess flow device.
Propane System

Max output is 200,000 BTU/hr. It is used to connect propane cylinders to regulators, hoses and other fittings. It is not for use on gas grills and other low pressure devices.

Servicing or filling
Have the RV checked for leaks at the connections on the propane system soon after the purchase and the initial filling of each propane cylinder.

• While the propane tanks are being filled, ONLY the qualified propane service technician should be near the RV. No one should be inside.

When you have a new cylinder filled for the first time, make sure your propane supplier purges your new cylinder of trapped air. Otherwise, an improper mixture of gas and air will make it impossible to light your propane appliances. For best performance the new propane cylinder must be carefully purged before filling.

LP gas container overfill
NEVER allow your propane cylinder(s) to be filled beyond the maximum safe level marked on the cylinder. Your propane system is designed for gas vapor only. An overfilled cylinder could force liquid propane into the system, creating a hazardous condition.

Propane Leak Test
ALWAYS test for leaks with a solution of dish soap & water.

• Apply the solution with a spray bottle, to the outside of all gas line joints and fittings.

• If a leak is present, the soapy solution will bubble at the leak point.

• As a general rule, small bubbles indicate a small leak while large bubbles indicate a larger leak.

NEVER use a solution containing ammonia or chlorine when locating leaks.

• These products are corrosive to copper gas lines and brass fittings, which could result in deterioration of the copper and brass components.

If a leak is not fixed by tightening the connection, shut OFF the propane system valve(s) and immediately contact your dealer or a qualified propane service representative.

WARNING
BEFORE entering a propane or fuel service station make sure ALL pilot lights are extinguished.

• Shut OFF the gas to all appliances by CLOSING the Propane Gas Main Shut Off Valve.

• ALWAYS shut OFF any engine before refueling.

• DO NOT smoke, and

• DO NOT operate other ignition sources while refueling.

WARNING
If you suspect your propane container has been overfilled, contact your dealer or a qualified propane technician for assistance immediately.

DO NOT use or attempt to service an overfilled propane container yourself.

DANGER
Extinguish ALL flames.
NEVER use an open flame to check for leaks.
Failure to follow this warning could result in a fire or explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

WARNING
DO NOT check for leaks using products that contain ammonia or chlorine; these products can cause cracks to form on the metal tubing and brass fittings.
Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm

Your RV is equipped with a combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm. Please read and follow the component manufacturer instructions supplied in your Owner Information Package.

For detailed information on this alarm, See page 38-42, Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO)/Propane (LP) Alarm.

Installing the Propane Cylinders

The position of the propane cylinder(s) and hoses is critical to proper operation and propane flow. FOLLOW these instructions to make sure your propane container(s) are connected properly.

1. CHECK that all the RV appliances are shut OFF.
2. CHECK that each LP cylinder Shut-Off Valve is CLOSED.
3. CONNECT the 3/8" low-pressure hose to the outlet of the two-stage regulator.
4. PLACE the LP Cylinder on the bracket in the recess compartment or housing and secure it so the outlets of the cylinder valve are facing the “sidewall” of the compartment or housing.
5. MOUNT the regulator on the center back wall of the compartment or housing so the vent is pointed downward.
6. ATTACH the 1/4" inverted flare x 18" Type-1 pigtail hose to the regulator inlet and the right hand swivel nut to the cylinder valve.
7. ATTACH the main supply hose from the regulator to the brass manifold fitting in the frame of the trailer. The swivel brass nut on the main hose will be your final attachment.

Remember each time the propane container is removed:

- CHECK that ALL fittings are tight.
- CHECK that ALL connections are tested with a propane leak detector (or soapy water) solution.
- OPEN the main shut-off valve on the LP cylinder very slowly. This avoids propane freeze up, caused by a fast rush of propane to the excess flow valve.
- If you do experience a propane freeze up, CLOSE the main valve and wait at least fifteen (15) minutes before trying again. For more information, refer to the regulator manufacturer’s operator manual.

WARNING
Test Propane Gas Alarm operation after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

WARNING
NEVER turn the 12-volt battery disconnect control to the OFF position and disconnect the battery cable to silence the alarm.

WARNING
The pigtail hose MUST be installed to avoid tension or pulling stress at either end of the hose. Keep the pigtail hose away from sharp edges of the cylinder collar, rigid corners, walls, doors or other compartment structures including the cover.

WARNING
Ensure that all fasteners are secured before traveling.
LISTEN carefully. A hissing sound longer than one second, may indicate a propane leak. If you suspect that there is a leak, close the shut-off valve, then contact your dealer or qualified propane technician for repair assistance.

REPLACE all protective covers and caps on the propane system after filling. Make sure the valve is closed. Install the LP bottle cover and use the bungee cord at the bottom to secure it in place for travel or storage purposes.

Propane Regulator

The two-stage regulator has the only moving components in the propane system. Its sole function is to reduce the pressure from the propane containers to a safe and consistent low operating pressure.

The first stage reduces the container pressure to 10-13 lbs. The second stage further reduces the 10-13 lbs. of pressure to an operating pressure of 11" W.C. (water column) or 6.35 oz. of outlet pressure to your appliances.

For optimum performance, the second stage will need to be adjusted by your dealer (or qualified propane service technician) using a properly calibrated manometer.

- If the pressure is too high, the safety and performance of the propane system will be affected.
- If the pressure is too low, the LP appliances will NOT operate correctly.

If your RV is equipped with the automatic two-stage regulator, with both cylinders full of propane, turn the lever on the regulator towards the cylinder you wish to use first. This will now be the supply cylinder and the other the reserve.

Slowly open both cylinder valves. The indicator on top of the regulator will change to green. When the supply cylinder is empty, the indicator will change to red. Now turn the regulator lever to the reserve cylinder side and the green signal should return. You may now remove the empty cylinder to have it refilled without interrupting the flow from the full bottle. After filling the cylinder, connect the pigtail hose and slowly open the bottle valve.

WARNING

All propane connections should be checked periodically as vibrations from travel may cause them to loosen. Failure to check connections could lead to a propane leak resulting in a fire or explosion that could cause serious injury or death.

Propane regulators must always be installed with the regulator vent facing downward. Regulators that are not located in baggage compartments have been equipped with a protective cover. Make sure the regulator vent faces downward and (if applicable) the cover is in place to minimize vent blockage that could result in excessive gas pressure causing fire or explosion.

LP Regulator: The red color on the top dial indicates the LP bottles are empty. If the LP bottles were full, the dial would show green.
Propane System Hoses, Tubes, Pipes & Fittings

The hoses, pipes, tubes and fittings used in your propane system are designed to withstand pressures exceeding those of the propane system. However, because environment and time can both contribute to the deterioration of these components, they must be inspected for wear at regular intervals. Be sure to inspect the hose before each season and when having the tank refilled. Look for signs of deterioration such as cracks or loss of flexibility. When replacing the hose or other propane components, always replace them with components of the same type and rating (check with your dealer).

Fittings are used to connect the various system components to each other. The P.O.L. fitting at the end of the propane supply hose is made of brass so that pipe sealants are not necessary to prevent leaking. It also has a left-handed thread, which means that it is turned clockwise to remove, and counter-clockwise to tighten. The P.O.L. fitting has been designed to help restrict the flow of LP gas in the event of a regulator failure or hose malfunction.

Cooking with Propane

Unlike homes, the amount of oxygen supply is limited due to the size of the RV. Proper ventilation when using the cooking appliance(s) will help you avoid the danger of asphyxiation.

For additional safety instructions, See pages page 143-145, Appliances.

Traveling with Propane

BEFORE towing your RV,

1. ALWAYS check that the propane bottles are properly fastened in place, and

2. TURN OFF the gas at the LP bottle. This disables all gas appliances and pilot lights.

DO NOT operate the propane system when the RV is in motion.

• Some states prohibit propane appliances to be operated during travel (especially in underground tunnels).

• Make sure to know the laws for the areas where you travel.
Using the Propane System

After the RV is completely set up and you are prepared for camping enjoyment, use the following steps for propane operation:

1. CLOSE ALL burner valves, controls and pilot light valves.

2. OPEN the propane tank’s main valve VERY SLOWLY. This avoids a fast rush of propane vapor through the excess flow valve which can cause a propane freeze-up.
   • If a propane freeze-up occurs, CLOSE the main valve and wait 15 minutes before trying again.

3. LISTEN carefully as propane begins to flow.
   • If a hissing noise is heard for more than one or two seconds, CLOSE the main valve and contact your dealer to have your propane system tested.

4. LIGHT the appliances ONLY as directed in the appropriate manufacturer manual (found in your Owner Information Package).

BEFORE using the propane system, make sure that you read and understand ALL instructions and safety requirements. The Owner Information Package contains operator manuals for the various appliances hooked to your propane system.

If you have additional questions or concerns, Consult with your dealer and/or the specific manufacturer.

WARNING

DO NOT operate the gas appliances while your RV is in motion. Unpredictable wind currents may be created, and cause flame reversal in the water heater burner tube, which could result in fire damage. This could also activate the water heater’s Thermal Cut Off Fuse and completely shut down the water heater until the thermal cut off fuse is replaced.
Calculating Propane Use

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel's furnace, refrigerator, water heater and range (if applicable) may all use propane to operate. Use the BTU rating of each appliance to determine how long your propane supply will last. Propane consumption depends on their individual use and the length of time operated.

Most RV gas appliances are operated intermittently. Unless there is heavy use of hot water, the water heater consumption of propane is minimal. During cool temperature or high wind conditions, furnace consumption can be extremely high.

To calculate your propane supply, take the BTU ratings for your propane appliances and divide that into the BTU availability. Each gallon of propane (3.86 liters) produces about 91,500 BTUs (46,514 kilojoules) of heat energy.

**Average Propane Consumption**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appliance</th>
<th>Average BTU Consumption/Hr.</th>
<th>Kilojoules/Hr.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
<td>8,800</td>
<td>9,284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerator</td>
<td>640-1,200</td>
<td>675-1,266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furnace</td>
<td>16,000 - 35,000</td>
<td>16,881 - 36,927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range w/ Oven</td>
<td>7,100</td>
<td>7,491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range - Rear Burner</td>
<td>6,500</td>
<td>6,857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range - Front Burner</td>
<td>9,000</td>
<td>9,496</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appliances

The following is a brief overview of the factory-installed, RV appliances. Please refer to the manufacturer’s owner manuals found in your Owner Information Package for detailed operating instructions for each specific component.

*If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.*

Microwave

- Sufficient 120-volt power MUST be available BEFORE operating the microwave.
- To prevent damage, ALWAYS make sure that the microwave turntable is secured prior to traveling.

Refrigerator

An RV refrigerator is not intended for quick cooling or freezing. For best results, stock with food that is already cold or frozen.

- Food items should be arranged so air can circulate freely.
- DO NOT cover the shelves with paper or plastic.
- Keep the area at the back of the refrigerator clean and free of debris.
- Check that the exterior Refrigerator Vent is free of any obstructions (i.e., spider webs, bird nests, etc.).
  - Use a soft cloth to dust off the debris.
- For optimum efficiency and performance, the refrigerator should be checked at least twice a year as part of routine maintenance.
Cooking with Propane

For additional safety instructions, See page 135-143, Propane System.

In Case Of A Grease Fire

Grease is flammable. Wipe any spills immediately. NEVER allow grease to collect around the top burners or on the cook top surface.

If a fire does start, follow these basic safety rules:

1. Have everyone evacuate the RV immediately.
2. After everyone is clear and accounted for, check the fire to see if you can attempt to put it out. If it is large or the fire is fuel-fed, get clear of the RV and have the Fire Department handle the emergency.
3. Try to smother a flaming pan with a tight-fitting lid or cookie sheet.
4. Never pick up a flaming pan.
5. Flaming grease outside of the pan can be extinguished with baking soda or a multipurpose Dry Chemical or Foam-Type fire extinguisher.

Outdoor Grill / Cooktop (If So Equipped)

Please read and understand the Outdoor Grill / Cooktop manufacturer’s manual BEFORE using the appliance.

- Follow all safety alerts, warnings, and instructions when using the Outdoor Grill / Cooktop.
- Keep this and all other manufacturer manuals in the Owner Information Package for future reference.

Oven

Please read and understand the Oven manufacturer’s manual BEFORE using the appliance.

- Follow all safety alerts, warnings, and instructions when using the Oven.
- DO NOT use the oven as a storage area.
- The propane gas oven ignites using a pilot light.

If you have any questions contact your dealer or Grand Design RV customer service.
Range Hood

The range hood has a both a light and fan control switch on the front panel. The 8” x 8” aluminum mesh grease filter (located on the underside range hood) can be gently hand-washed using mild soap and water.

Range Hood/Microwave Exterior Vent with Locking Damper

**IMPORTANT NOTE:**
- BEFORE using the Exhaust Fan, the exterior vent’s damper locks MUST be in the OPEN position.
- The damper locks are located outside of the RV, in the exterior vent, on each side of the damper.
- For travel and storage, please return the damper to the LOCKED position.

Range Top

Please read and understand the Range Top manufacturer’s manual BEFORE using the appliance.

- Follow all safety alerts, warnings, and instructions when using the Range Top.

To prevent damage, ALWAYS use the manufacturer recommended size flat bottom pan(s). Proper relationship of pans to burner size will improve efficiency. Generally, the pan should be large enough to cover the range top burner, but not be more than one inch larger than the burner grate. The use of undersized pans could expose a portion of the heating element to direct contact and may result in ignition of clothing.

DO NOT use a broiler pan, griddle, or any other large utensil that covers more than one range top burner at a time. This will create excessive heat that may cause melting, sooting, or discoloration.

**WARNING**

NEVER leave cooking food unattended.

Turn pan handles inward, but not over the tops of the other range burners.

Ensure that pans used are large enough to contain the food and avoid boil-overs. Heavy splattering or spills left on the cook top can ignite and cause burns.

If using glass, ceramic, earthenware or other glazed utensils (or cookware) verify that it is safe for use on the top burners.

Only certain types of utensils (or cookware) are suitable for surface or top burner use.
Central Vacuum

The vacuum canister is located in the forward pass-through storage compartment or the front compartment. To access and change the vacuum dust bag, depress the button on the cover to remove it. Be sure the new vacuum dust bag is attached correctly before reattaching the cover.

- **BEFORE** you run the central vacuum, **CHECK** that your RV has sufficient power.

- To operate, **ATTACH** the vacuum hose, **then** OPEN the toe kick to turn ON the vacuum.

*New vacuum dust bags can be ordered through your dealer, and direct from InterVac™ on their website [intervacdesign.com](http://intervacdesign.com), or call toll-free (888) 499-1925.*

Washer/Dryer Prep

If your RV was built with this feature, be aware the cabinet space provided is ONLY intended for the installation of an aftermarket RV-rated washer/dryer (customer supplied).

*Please consult your dealer or the appliance manufacturer for installation assistance.*
Audio/Visual System Guide

The following is a basic overview of the audio/visual (A/V) electronics operation. The information in this section is written for original factory-installed equipment usage. Refer to the manufacturer’s user guides included in your Owner Information Package for detailed operating instructions for each specific component, or visit that manufacturer’s website.

*If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.*

**Radio operation:**
1. Turn ON the radio.
2. Select speaker output using the controls on the radio face (radio sound does not run through the sound bar).

**CD operation**
1. Turn ON the radio.
2. Select speaker output using the controls on the radio face (radio sound does not run through the sound bar).
3. Insert CD to play.

**TV operation**
1. Turn on the TV power supply.
2. Turn on the TV and select your signal input using the “source” button.
3. Adjust the TV Antenna/Channel Tuning as needed.
   - See page 149, TV Roof Antenna.
4. Turn ON the sound bar (the TV speakers are not used, nor does TV sound run through the radio speakers).

**DVD operation**
1. Turn off the TV power supply.
2. Turn on the TV.
3. Turn ON the sound bar (the TV speakers are not used, nor does TV sound run through the radio speakers).
4. Insert DVD to play.
TV Reception Basics

TV broadcasting is a point-to-point communication. Any obstructions between the transmitter and the antenna will degrade the signal, affecting picture quality.

• Television stations transmit their broadcast signal “over the air” to surrounding areas.
• TV antennas are designed to receive the broadcast signals.
• Picture quality depends on the antenna type and your distance from the transmitter.
• The further you are from the transmitter, the weaker the signal becomes, affecting picture quality.

TV Signal Booster

• **The TV Signal Booster must be turned ON for improved antenna reception.**

• The TV Signal Booster sends 12-volt DC power to the TV roof antenna. This voltage energizes the transistors in the antenna head amplifier.

• Turn OFF the *TV Signal Booster* to view cable/satellite TV, or to use a DVD/Blu-ray player or Game System.

Cable/Satellite Outlet

Both Cable and Satellite connection outlets are found in the outside utility center.

• The *Cable* input connects to an RG6 cable run through in-line splitters to provide service at multiple locations.

• The *Satellite* inputs connect to RG6 cables run directly to specific locations (no splitters). This allows for clean transfer of HD signals from the satellite dish.

*Please refer to the (customer supplied) satellite manufacturer manual for setup, care and maintenance instructions.*
**TV Roof Antenna**

To watch local TV stations, turn ON power to *both the TV and the TV Roof Antenna*. For the best TV reception, your antenna must point toward the nearest signal transmitter.

The exact locations of transmitting towers can be found at: [www.fcc.gov/reports-research/maps/dtv-maps/](http://www.fcc.gov/reports-research/maps/dtv-maps/)

**Winegard AIR 360 Operation (If So Equipped)**

- You MUST run a *Channel Scan* on your TV in order to receive maximum programming.

- Ensure the antenna power supply (wall plate) is in the “ON” position and the green indicator light is illuminated.

- A new scan will find any new channels that have been added in your area as well as finding any channels that have changed or moved since the last scan.

*While the steps to perform a channel scan may vary between televisions or compatible devices, below are some general guidelines to follow.*

**How to Run a Channel Scan using the television remote:**

1. Select “Menu” then select “Settings.”

2. Select “Channel Setup.”

3. Select “Antenna” or “Air,” depending on your TV. Make sure you are not on “Cable.”

4. Select “Channel Search” or “Channel Scan.”
   - The steps to perform a channel scan may vary.
   - If the wording on your TV differs from the options shown, refer to your TV user manual for help.
   - **Running a Channel Scan is NOT the same as pressing Channel UP/DOWN on your remote.**

5. To keep your saved channels up-to-date, it is recommended to run a *Channel Scan*:
   - Once per Month
   - When a channel is lost, *and*
   - When you change locations.
The following section contains an overview of the original factory-installed heating and cooling components. For more information on each specific component, please refer to the manufacturer’s operating instructions found in your Owner Information Package.

*If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.*

### Ducting & Return Air

The adjustable registers are **ONLY** intended to *reduce* airflow as needed. All heat discharges, return air grills and registers **MUST** remain free and clear of any obstructions

- Registers **SHOULD NOT** be completely CLOSED.

### Air Conditioner

Your thermostat controls the roof-mounted air conditioning system equipped on your RV. **ALWAYS** check that you have sufficient power available before operating the air conditioner.

#### Cooling vs. heat gain

The roof air conditioner can, at best, cool the air it intakes by 20° F. During hot weather, through the day, your RV will absorb heat, increasing the inside temperature. This is referred to as **heat gain**.

To keep the inside temperature comfortable, reducing the RV’s heat gain is just as important as the cooling ability of your air conditioner. To reduce heat gain, follow these steps:

1. Park the RV in a shaded area.
2. CLOSE the blinds or drapes.
3. Use the awnings to shade your RV from sun exposure.
4. Avoid the use of heat producing appliances.
5. **SET** the air conditioner *Fan/Cooling mode* to **HIGH**. During high humidity or high temperatures, this will provide maximum efficiency.
6. Turn **ON** the air conditioner early in the morning, to give it a head start on cooling.
**Air conditioner gasket**

The air conditioner is subjected to wind pressures along with motor vibration during normal operation. A foam gasket forms a weatherproof seal between the roof material and the sub-frame of the air conditioner.

Inspect the gasket seal (at least) annually. Check for leaks and re-tighten the mounting bolts if needed. To prevent damage to the gasket, be careful NOT to *over-tighten* the bolts.

The air conditioner gasket will eventually wear out and need replacement. To gain access to the bolts, remove the filtered panel cover on central air systems or the entire air box on non-central air conditioners.

**Heat pump**

A heat pump is one base unit that can operate in two modes, heating or cooling. The travel or flow of the refrigerant is reversed depending on which cycle you choose to operate:

- **Cooling Mode**: Heat is removed from the *inside* air and released to the *outside* air.
- **Heating Mode**: Heat is removed from the *outside* air and released to the *inside* air.

**Furnace**

The RV furnace installed in the RV is controlled by a thermostat. The furnace requires both 12-volt power and propane gas for full operation. Make sure you have sufficient power available before operating your furnace.

- **ALWAYS** have your furnace maintenance completed by a qualified technician (at least once a year, more often depending on furnace use).
- **NEVER** attempt to repair the furnace yourself.

*If you have any questions, Contact your dealer or Grand Design Customer Service.*

**Fireplace**

Refer to the manufacturer owner’s manual for operation, service and maintenance information.

*If you have further questions, please contact your dealer.*

---

**WARNING**

DO NOT operate the furnace when the slide rooms are retracted in the closed position.

The furnace should be inspected periodically (*monthly* during the heating season) for the presence of soot on the vent. Soot is formed whenever combustion is incomplete. This is a visual warning that the furnace is operating in an unsafe manner.

If soot is observed on the vent, IMMEDIATELY shut the furnace OFF and contact a qualified service agency. Operating the furnace under this condition could lead to serious property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

To ensure your personal safety, DO NOT obstruct or alter the furnace in any manner. DO NOT install screens over the vent for any reason. Screens will become restricted and cause unsafe furnace operation. For your safety, only OEM factory authorized parts are to be used on your furnace.
Thermostat

- UP – Wake thermostat and increase temperature.
- DOWN – Wake thermostat and decrease temperature.
- MODE – Wake thermostat, change mode.

The display indicates the mode and the room temperature. When the mode button is pressed once, the thermostat will wake and if your thermostat is equipped with a backlight, the backlight will illuminate. When the mode button is pressed again, the mode will change.

PRESS the ◄ or ▲ button to wake the thermostat; the set temperature will display and flash. PRESS the ◄ or ▲ button again to change the set temperature. The thermostat will go back to sleep mode after 5 seconds if no buttons are pressed.

**NOTE:** To change the thermostat from Fahrenheit to Celsius, or Celsius to Fahrenheit:

- HOLD the mode button down for five (5) seconds.
- The backlight will turn OFF after five (5) seconds.

Roof Vents

The roof vents allow fresh air to circulate through your RV. They may be electric (12-volt DC) and/or manual. Make sure that roof vents are closed while traveling, and when you will be away from the RV, to prevent unexpected weather damage.

**MaxxFan Roof Vent**

All MaxxFan keypad commands answer with an audible beep:

- Press FAN ON - Vent automatically lifts open and fan starts running at the last selected speed.
- Press FAN OFF - Vent closes and shuts off the fan motor.
- Press FAN ON (with the fan running) - cycles through the 4 fan speeds. Fan is Exhaust Only.
- Vent OPEN button - Opens the vent without running the fan motor.
- Vent CLOSE button - closes the vent, if the fan motor is running it will continue to run and enter Ceiling Fan mode.
Slideout Awnings

A slideout awning (also called a topper) will automatically open and close along with the slide-room. When fully extended, the topper is level (which may cause water to pool on top of the canopy). As the slide-room is closed, the topper rolls up causing any water to spill over the sides of the awning.

**To avoid damage to the awning and/or slide-room:**
- ALWAYS check that your slideout awning is entirely free of debris (leaves, twigs, etc.) BEFORE retracting the slideout.

Patio Awning

**To operate the door-side Patio Awning:**
Select “Awning” on the ONEControl® System See pages 85-86.

**On the G-Class**, to operate the door-side Patio Awning:
- Locate the Awning switch on the Command Center.
- PRESS and HOLD Patio Awning switch until the awning is in the desired position, then RELEASE the switch.
- RETRACT the awning into the Travel Position when you will be away from the RV for an extended period of time, and during windy or stormy weather conditions.

**Positioning The Awning (When Extended)**
To prevent damage to the arms and to reduce pooling on the canopy, it is important that the roller tube is correctly positioned when the awning is extended.

*Use the Extend/Retract switch to adjust the roller tube position.*

---

**WARNING**
The Awning controls are found on the ONEControl® System.

**DANGER**

On the G-Class, the Patio Awning Switch is located inside the RV, on the Command Center.

**WARNING**

Watch your hand placement while deploying and retracting, possible pinch points.

**WARNING**

DO NOT attempt any repairs to any awning. The awning roll tube is under extreme spring tension. Repairs should only be performed by an authorized dealer and/or repair center.

**WARNING**

Awnings must be closed and locked (if applicable) while the RV is in transit.
Patio Awning, Continued

Adjusting the Pitch

The awning arms have 6 pitch adjustment settings. The awning can be extended and retracted in any of these positions without having to reset the pitch between uses. See diagram below.

1. Grasp the awning arm in the area shown and gently pull toward the vehicle to reduce pressure on the pins.

2. Fully depress both pitch adjustment pins located on the scissor arm. There is one on each side of the arm; these must be fully pressed in at the same time.

Tip: LIGHTLY pulling the arm toward the vehicle will decrease the force required to press the pitch adjustment pins.

3. Slide the arm to the desired set hole - towards the coach for a lower pitch and away from the coach for a higher pitch.

Awning Care

Maintaining a Carefree Awning is easy. Just follow these basic steps:

- Always operate the awning according to the instructions.
- Periodically check that the fasteners are tight. *Tighten if necessary.*
- Keep the awning fabric and arms clean.
Arm Care
The best method of keeping the arms and braces operating smoothly is to clean them. Dirt and debris can cause the arms not to move easily. Periodically wash out the channels with running water (i.e. a hose). If the arms still do not move easily, lightly spray the joints and pivot points with a dry silicone lubricant after the arms have been cleaned and dried thoroughly.

Fabric Care
1. Hose off fabrics on a monthly basis with clear water to help prevent dirt from becoming deeply embedded in the fabric. In most environments, a thorough cleaning will be needed every two to three years.

2. When it’s time for a thorough cleaning, the fabric can be cleaned while still on the awning frame. Use a soft brush and warm water with soap.

3. When cleaning the fabric, it is important to observe the following:
   • Always use a natural soap, never detergent.
   • Water should be cold to lukewarm, never more than 100°F.
   • Air-dry only. Never apply heat to the fabric.
   • Always allow the fabric to dry thoroughly before rolling up the awning.

Mildew
Mildew is a fungus growth that looks like dirt. Vinyl coated polyester fabrics are mildew resistant because of a chemical biocide in the vinyl coating. Under ordinary conditions, mildew will not appear. However, in areas where high temperature and humidity are common, mildew can be a problem and require the material to be washed more frequently.

Pooling/Water Dump
When water collects on the top of the fabric, this is known as “pooling”. It is recommended that if water accumulates on the top; RETRACT the awning in steps (8”-12”) to dump the water. This will help prevent the fabric from stretching or distorting.

For more information, please refer to the awning manufacturer’s user manual.
Slideout Systems

Slideout rooms are designed to provide you additional living space during stationary camping.

BEFORE operating your slideout system:
- Check that you have sufficient power available.
- Level and Stabilize the RV

- Leveling helps to keep the RV square, so the slideouts extend, retract and seal correctly.
- If the RV is NOT level, the slideout rooms and/or mechanisms may become damaged.
- The slideout rooms DO NOT need additional support. Non-warranty damage can occur from improper use of aftermarket support jacks.

Slideout Operation

To operate the slideouts select “Slides” on the ONEControl® System. See pages 85-86.

It is normal for the slide rooms to make creaking or squeaking noises while moving. These noises are especially common during the break-in period while the components are seating properly. This will decrease after a few extend/retract cycles. Note that there will always be some noticeable noises when operating the slideout.

1. **ALWAYS level and stabilize the RV, BEFORE operating your slideout system.**

2. Check that your auxiliary battery is fully charged or the RV is connected to shore power. Turn off all unnecessary lights to maximize available power.

3. Close all cabinet doors and drawers.

4. BEFORE extending or retracting:
   - Check that the *interior* path of the slideout room is clear of people, pets, furniture, clothing, etc.
   - Check that the *exterior* path of the slideout room is free from any obstructions.
5. Inspect the sides, top and bottom of the extended slide-out room. If the outside of the slideout room is wet, wipe it dry before retracting.

6. Clean any water puddles or debris brought inside your RV from slideout operation immediately.

7. Press and hold the appropriate slide room switch to either IN or OUT, until the room is completely extended or retracted.

- DO NOT continue to TOUCH the slide room control past the point the room is fully extended/retracted or damage may occur.
- For the weather seals to be effective, the slideout room MUST be completely extended/retracted.
- BEFORE operating your RV’s slideout systems it is important to review all safety alerts.

**Slideout maintenance**

While the slideout room is extended, the outside surfaces of the room and mechanism may collect dirt and debris. The slideout seals are not designed to remove the debris or any water that may accumulate.

- When you retract the slideout, any debris on the outside of the room, is brought inside your RV.

BEFORE retracting the slideout(s):

- Inspect the outside surfaces for snow, ice, dirt, dust, insect nests, etc.

- Check for standing water on the slideout topper awning (if so equipped).

- Clean and dry the outside surfaces of the room and mechanism as much as possible.

**Contact your dealer** or Grand Design RV Customer Service for troubleshooting and/or repair if your slideout system:

- Stalls out before reaching end of stroke, or
- Does NOT close and seal tightly.

---

**NOTICE**

Inspect both sides of the slideout room for interior or exterior obstructions prior to operating.

**NOTICE**

Ensure that the RV is level before operating the slideout room.

Water leaks and other problems could result if the slideout is operated without leveling the RV.

**NOTICE**

For long-term storage, it is recommended that the slide rooms be closed (retracted).

**NOTICE**

Never ‘jump’ or charge the auxiliary battery from the power connections on the InWall Controller. Always do this at the auxiliary battery.
Hydraulic Through Frame Slideout System

Both your living area and kitchen slide rooms are powered by the hydraulic slide out system. Although the system is designed to be almost maintenance free, actuate the slideouts and jacks once or twice a month to keep the seals and internal moving parts lubricated.

Complete this simple maintenance as required:

1. Change the fluid every 36 months (in reservoir ONLY)

   **DO NOT fill the reservoir with the slideouts or landing gear EXTENDED, or it will OVERFLOW when they are RETRACTED.**

   a. ALWAYS fully RETRACT the landing gear and slideouts BEFORE adding fluid to the reservoir.

   b. Check the fluid level ONLY when jacks and slideouts are fully retracted.

   c. When checking fluid level, fluid should be 1/4 inch below the fill spout lip.

2. Check the fluid level every month.

3. Inspect and clean all pump unit electrical connections on the pump unit every 12 months.

4. Remove dirt and road debris from the slideout arms and cylinders as needed.

5. Leveling legs that stay in the extended position for long periods require protection from the elements.
   - Spray the exposed landing gear rod with a silicone lubricant every every three (3) months.
   - If your RV is located in a salty environment, spray the rods with a silicone lubricant every four to six (4-6) weeks.

**Filling the reservoir**

The Lippert hydraulic slideout system uses Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF). Any ATF can be used, but a full synthetic or a synthetic blend (like Dexron II, Dexron III or Mercon 5) works best. The translucent plastic reservoir is located in the front compartment, and makes it easy to check oil level. It is recommended that the oil level be checked prior to operating the system.
Check that the breather cap is free of contamination before removing, replacing or installing. In colder temperatures (less that 10°F), the cylinders and jacks may extend and retract slowly due to the fluid’s molecular nature. For cold weather operation, fluid specially formatted for low temperatures may be desirable.

1. **ALWAYS fully retract** the slideouts and landing gear BEFORE adding fluid to the reservoir.

2. Remove the breather/fill cap.

3. Pour ATF into breather/fill cap.
   a. Do not allow any contamination into reservoir during fill process.
   b. Standard reservoir holds approximately 2 quarts (1.89 liters) of ATF.

4. Fill to within ¼” of top of reservoir.

5. Replace breather/fill cap when finished.

**Hydraulic slideout system maintenance**

It is recommended to keep the moving parts clean when operating in harsh environments (road salt, ice buildup, etc.). They can be washed with mild soap and water. No grease or lubrication is necessary and in some situations may be detrimental to the long term dependability of the hydraulic slide system.

Check for any visible signs of external damage or leakage before and after movement of the slide. When the rooms are out, visually inspect the exterior inner and outer assemblies of the slideout located underneath the room. Also inspect around the shoe of the leveling jacks for signs of leakage. Check for excess buildup of dirt or other foreign materials; remove any debris that may be present.

If the hydraulic slide system squeaks or makes any noises, DO NOT use grease. It is permissible to apply a coat of lightweight oil ONLY to the slideout drive shaft and roller areas. Remove any excess oil so dirt and debris do not build-up.

*For Instructions on* how to override the hydraulic system, [See page 196-200, Hydraulic System - Manual Override.](#)
Lippert Electric Through Frame Slideout System (Equipped on G-Class)

Extending and retracting the slideout room is powered by the Lippert Through Frame Electric Slideout System. It is a rack and pinion guide system with a motor driven ball screw actuator. The actuator is equipped with an automatic clutching system. The Lippert Electric Slideout System is designed to operate as a negative ground system.

Manual operation

The Lippert Through Frame Electric Slideout System comes with a manual override. Locate the 1” round Slideout Override Access Hole in the skirt metal on the opposite side (of the RV) from the room that you are trying to move.

- **Disconnect your RV battery.**
- Insert the crank handle extension.
- Turn *clockwise* to retract the slideout room.
- Turn *counter-clockwise* to extend the slideout room.

*If using the manual override feature:*

Use EXTREME CAUTION to extend and/or retract the room. It is possible to extend or retract the slideout beyond the maximum open or closed positions. This can result in damage to the slide components, slide room structure or trim components.

**IMPORTANT:** The actuator is *manual ready.*

- DO NOT disengage the motor.
- Just hook up and crank..
**Maintenance**

Although the system is designed to be almost maintenance free, actuate the room once or twice a month to keep the seals and internal moving parts lubricated. Check for any visible signs or external damage before and after movement of the RV.

- For the best performance, the slideout system requires the auxiliary battery be fully charged.

- Check for corrosion, and loose or damaged terminals/connections at the battery, the control switch, and the electronic actuator motor.

- Check that the motor leads under the RV chassis are in good condition. These connections are subject to damage from road debris.

- When operating the Lippert electric slideout system in harsh environments (i.e., road salt, ice buildup, etc.) keep all moving parts clean, washing them as needed, with mild soap and water.

- Grease or lubrication is NOT necessary. It could even harm the long-term dependability of the slideout system.

**Service and adjustments**

- Slideout room adjustments should be performed ANNUALLY by a certified RV service technician.

- Any adjustments made by non-certified persons may void any and all warranty claims.
Schwintek In-Wall Slideout System

If the bedroom Schwintek In-Wall slideout does not extend or retract, follow these steps to override the system (it will be easier if you have one or more persons to assist you).

Electronic manual override for board revision C1 and newer:

1. The Schwintek circuit board for each slideout is located in the Front Compartment.

2. PRESS the MODE button six (6) times quickly, then PRESS a seventh (7th) time and HOLD for approximately five (5) seconds.

3. The RED and GREEN LED lights will begin to flash, confirming the override mode.

4. Release the MODE button.

5. Back inside the RV, PRESS and HOLD the Slide Room 2 switch IN until the room retracts completely.

WARNING

Before working underneath the RV, both the front and rear axles should be supported with jack stands. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION

During this override procedure, the Schwintek slide room motors are not synchronized. Visually watch the slide room, and if one side is moving significantly slower than the other (or not at all), immediately stop and call your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.
Manually push the slide room in override

1. Locate the circuit board.
2. Unplug both motors from circuit board.
   (this releases the motor brake)
3. Push or pull slide room in as desired;
   ◦ Larger rooms may require several people to push.
   ◦ Keep both sides of room relatively even.
4. When the bedroom slide is completely in, plug both the motors back in to the control board (this applies the motor brake for road travel).

Disengage motors, manually retract room and travel lock:

1. Locate and remove motor retention screw located near the top of each vertical column (on the outside behind the bulb seal).
2. Bend back the wipe seal and visually locate motor.
3. Pull the motor up until disengaged, about 1/2”. Replace the motor retention screw to hold the motor in this position.
4. Repeat this process for both sides of the slide room.
5. Push or pull the slide room back in to the opening, keeping the side of the slide room relatively even.
6. Re-engage motor to be ready for travel.
7. The room must be travel locked to keep room in place for road travel.
Troubleshooting the Schwintek Slideout System

Error codes
During operation, when an error occurs the board will use the LED’s to indicate where the problem exists.

- For motor specific faults, the GREEN LED will **blink once** for motor 1, and **blink twice** for motor 2.
- For error codes, the RED LED will **blink** between two and nine (2-9) times to indicate the error code (see below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Red LED Error Code</th>
<th>Error Code Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Battery drop out; battery capacity low enough to drop below 6 volts while running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Low battery; voltage below 8 volts at start of cycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>High battery; voltage greater than 18 volts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Excessive motor current; high amperage, also indicated by one (1) side of slide continually stalling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Motor short circuit; motor or wiring to motor has shorted out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hall signal not present; encoder is not providing a signal, usually a wiring problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hall power short to ground; power to encoder has been shorted to ground, usually a wiring problem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an error code is present, the board needs to be reset. Energizing the extend/retract switch resets the board. Energize the extend/retract switch again for normal operation.

Checking Fuses
The Schwintek slide system requires a minimum of 30-amp fuse. Check the fuse box (located in the command center) for blown fuses, and replace as necessary. If the fuse blows immediately upon replacement there may be a problem with the wiring to the control box (contact your dealer for assistance).

Low Voltage
The Schwintek slide controller is capable of operating the bedroom slide room with as little as 8-volts. But at these lower voltages the amperage requirement is greater. Check the voltage at the controller; if the voltage is lower than 11-volts, it is recommended that the auxiliary battery be placed on a charger until it is fully charged.
Only one (1) side moving

The Schwintek slide system has a separate motor to operate each side of the room. If only one side of the room moves a short distance (2 to 4 inches) and stops;

- **Will non-moving side move with help?**
  If only one (1) side of the room is moving, with someone’s assistance, push the non-moving side in the appropriate direction while pressing the switch to extend or retract the room. On larger rooms it may be necessary to have two (2) or more people pushing the room.

- **Non-moving side moved manually.**
  Try to push the non-moving side in and out. If a motor shaft has broken then it will be possible to move that side of the room several inches by hand. Larger rooms may require several people to push.

Schwintek slide system maintenance

- Check all four (4) gear racks installed on the exterior sidewalls of the slide room for debris (if found, remove any debris immediately).

- **The slideout system is designed to be maintenance-free.** If needed, lubricate ONLY the upper & lower Gib, Bearing Block, Coupler, and V-Roller on each side of the slide with CRC Power Lube with PTFE (in the green can). See the diagrams, Right.

Synchronizing the Slideout Motors

Periodically your Schwintek Slide System should be Re-Synchronized. To do so follow the simple procedure below:

1. Run the room OUT 10”- 12” and STOP.
2. Run rooms back IN and HOLD switch down until the motors limit out.
3. Repeat steps 1 & 2. Five to Six times, *then*
4. Run the room OUT *all the way* until the motors limit out.
5. Run rooms back IN 10”- 12” and STOP.
6. Repeat steps 4 & 5. Five to Six times

This process will Synchronize the motors so they are timed correctly.
Fuel Station

A Fuel Station is standard equipment on your Momentum FW. Most models have two separate (gasoline only) tanks. One tank supplies the pump/nozzle and one tank supplies the generator. Some models supply both systems with a single fuel tank.

BEFORE OPERATING: Please read, and follow all safety information in the Fuel Station section of this manual. Failure to comply could result in death or serious injury.

If you need further assistance, consult with your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Exhaust Fumes

Avoid inhaling any exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, which is a potentially toxic gas that is colorless and odorless. See page 37, Carbon Monoxide (CO).

- ALWAYS shut OFF the engine while refueling your vehicle or generator.
- DO NOT run any combustion engine in confined areas, such as a closed garage, or any longer than needed to move in or out of your RV’s garage.
- If a vehicle or generator engine is running nearby, RV windows should be closed to avoid drawing dangerous exhaust gases into the RV.
- If you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the RV, determine the cause and remedy as soon as possible.

Fuel Filler Cap

Open the Fuel Filler Cap Slowly: If the fuel filler cap is opened too quickly, fuel can spray out on you. This is more likely to happen in hot weather and/or if your tank is nearly full.

- To open: Remove the fuel filler cap by slowly turning it counterclockwise and waiting for any “hiss” noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.
- To close: Securely turn the cap clockwise until you hear clicking sounds. If you need to replace the fuel tank filler cap, use only a cap specified for your RV.
To Fill the Fuel Tanks:

- The *LEFT* fuel filler cap is the GENERATOR fuel tank, (Nearest to the *front* of the RV)
- The *RIGHT* fuel filler cap is the PUMP fuel tank. (Nearest the *rear* of the RV)
- The fuel tanks are made for *Unleaded Gas ONLY.*
  - Always use clean, fresh unleaded gasoline.
  - Gas blends cannot contain more than 15% Ethanol. The fuel tank(s) are not compatible with other fuel blends or diesel fuel.

**BEFORE filling the fuel station tank(s):**

- Level your RV from *side-to-side* and *front-to-back.*
- When the gas station pump shuts off, STOP fueling.
  - Do not over-fill
  - Do not *top-off* the fuel tank(s).
- Overfilling the tank(s) may result in fuel leakage and damage to the fuel station components.
- Be careful not to contaminate fuel with debris while the filler cap is removed.
- Replace the filler cap immediately when finished fueling.

---

**DANGER**

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if mis-used or mis-handled. If you have further questions consult your dealer or GDRV Customer Service for assistance.

- While refueling, always shut off the engine of the vehicle or equipment.
- Do not store or bring fuel or other flammable liquids inside the RV because a fire or explosion may result.
- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling.
- Do not overfill the fuel tank(s). The pressure in an overfilled fuel tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and/or fire.
- Fuel spills represent a serious fire hazard and should be cleaned up immediately.
- Never restart an engine or re-light any pilot lights while raw fuel is present.
- The fuel tanks are specifically made for unleaded gasoline. Always use clean, fresh unleaded fuel not containing a blend of more than 15% ethanol.

Failure to comply could result in fire, death or serious injury.
Fuel Station

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge located on the Fuel Station Control Panel indicates the amount of gasoline in the fuel tank(s).

See the photo on Next Page.

- ALWAYS check that the tank has fuel BEFORE operating the fuel pump.
- Press the rocker switch LEFT To view the Generator fuel tank.
- Press the rocker switch RIGHT To view the Pump fuel tank.

To Dispense Fuel

- ALWAYS turn OFF the Fuel Pump Switch in the event of an Emergency or spill.
- ALWAYS turn OFF the Fuel Pump Switch when the fuel station is not in use.

1. Open the compartment containing the fuel pump nozzle and hose.
2. Insert the nozzle into the receiving tank.
3. Open the small hatch on the inside of the compartment door, to reveal the Fuel Gauge and Fuel Pump Switch.
4. Turn ON the Fuel Pump Switch.
   - The safety timer will shut OFF the pump automatically after running for five (5) minutes.
5. ALWAYS keep the nozzle in contact with the tank fill opening of the vehicle or equipment being filled.
6. Squeeze the nozzle handle
7. Release the nozzle’s handle to stop the flow of fuel.
8. Turn OFF the Fuel Pump Switch.
Fuel Station Control Panel

Fuel Gauge

Fuel Pump Switch/
Emergency Shut-Off

Generator / Pump
Tank / Tank
Rocker Switch
Ramp Door

- Please use CAUTION at all times the rear loading ramp/door area of your RV is in use.

The Rear Ramp Door is easily operated by one person to give full access to the garage.

1. UNLOCK
2. PRESS the Handle Release directly below the lock.
3. PUSH FORWARD & PULL DOWN on the handle to unlatch each side of the rear door. See photo, Left.
4. SWING the handles and locking bars all the way to the outside of the RV until Ramp Door is clear.

The two-sided Lift-Assist (if so equipped) holds the door in any position and allows it to move up or down with only the slightest pressure. UNLOCK & UNLATCH by lifting and turning the handles on each side of rear door. See photos below.

- ALWAYS check that the area behind the RV is clear before unlocking and lowering the ramp door.
- The patio deck cables must be detached from the ramp door to utilize ramp. See page 174, #1.
- When lowered, the ramp allows you to easily load small vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, and rolling cargo.
- Use the Tie Down Points located in the garage floor to secure all vehicles or cargo items so they cannot come loose, unfastened, opened or released while the RV is in motion.

DANGER

Vehicles and equipment powered by internal combustion engines and placed in RVs may cause carbon monoxide poisoning or asphyxiation, which could result in death or serious injury.

The flammable liquids used to power these items can cause a fire or explosion, which can result in death or serious injury.

To reduce risk:

1. DO NOT start & idle the vehicle in the storage area.
2. DO NOT sleep in the vehicle storage area when vehicles are present.
3. Close doors separating the living area and garage when any vehicle is present.
4. DO NOT store, transport or dispense fuel inside the RV.
5. Open the air ventilation systems provided for venting while transporting vehicles.
6. DO NOT operate propane appliances, pilot lights or electrical equipment when motorized vehicles are present.
Patio Deck (If So Equipped)

Your unit may be equipped with a patio deck complete with folding rails. Caution should be taken not to exceed the ramp door weight capacities when in either the ramp position or the patio deck position, and to maintain even weight distribution.

See page 174-175, How to Set Up the Patio Rail Kit.

ALWAYS follow all instructions and safety labels while using your Momentum FW’s Ramp Door / Patio Deck.

**WARNING**

Maximum Capacity is based on an evenly distributed load in the patio position.
- Failure to observe the weight limit or use other than intended may result in personal injury.

**CAUTION**

When returning the ramp door to the stowed position, be sure all safety pins used to secure the rails during transit are in place and secured in place with the safety clip.
- Failure to do so could result in damage to the rail and ramp door.

**WARNING**

- Patio has a Maximum Capacity of 10 persons or 1,500 lbs maximum. The total weight of the patio MUST remain within the 1,500 lb. limit.
- Stabilizer jacks MUST be used when the ramp door is in the patio position.
- Support jacks on the patio door must be used where applicable.
- Exceeding load limit may lead to collapse and possible personal injury.

**CAUTION**

- Maximum Capacity is 3,000 lbs in the ramp position with the load evenly distributed.
- Maximum 1,000 lbs per wheel contact.
- Exceeding load limit may lead to collapse and possible personal injury.

**WARNING**

- Failure to follow these instructions may result in death, serious injury or property damage.
- ALWAYS secure the ramp door in either the closed, ramp or party deck position.
- NEVER use the ramp door while anything is obstructing operation.
- Keep hands away from all openings, rollers and cables when operating the ramp door.

**CAUTION**

- Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious injury or property damage.
- Read the instructions before installation or operation.
- NEVER force the ramp door in any direction.
- ALWAYS make sure the cables are pulling out straight, staying in the grooved portion of the rollers and not coming in contact with any obstruction.
- DO NOT operate the ramp door if the cable is frayed or damaged.
Retractable Screen Wall (If So Equipped)

To avoid possible injury and/or damage to the Screen Wall, always extend it fully and fasten the floor snaps when in use, and retract it fully when not in use.

- CHECK that all obstacles are removed from the path of the screen wall.
- LOCATE the strap attached to the screen wall pull bar.
- PULL DOWN first by the strap, then by the pull bar until the screen wall is completely extended.

To store the Screen Wall:
- PULL UP on the pull bar handle to release it from the grabber catch, then PUSH UP the screen wall until it is fully retracted.

Power Beds (If So Equipped)

HappiJac Power Bed

The HappiJac® power bed lift system supports the two beds which can be raised up and out the way while storing or hauling ATV’s or other equipment, and lowered again for use when needed.

Operating precautions:
- NEVER operate the bed(s) when person(s) or any items other than bedding are on the bed platform.
- NEVER travel with any items other than bedding on the beds. Loose items can become projectiles.
- ALWAYS check that the locking pins are securely fastened at all four corners of the bed platform BEFORE using the bed(s) or towing the RV.
- ALWAYS raise the bed(s) to the full UP position BEFORE the RV is towed to avoid damaging the bed(s) as a result of bouncing.
- ALWAYS check that the areas above, below and adjacent to the bed(s) are free from obstructions BEFORE operating the bed(s).
- ALWAYS check that bedding does not over-hang the ends of the beds where it could become entrapped BEFORE operating bed(s).
- ALWAYS exercise care when loading cargo/vehicles in the bed area to avoid damage to the bed mechanism.
- ALWAYS properly secure loads in the bed area to avoid damage to the bed mechanism.

WARNING

RAISE THE REAR BED TO THE HIGHEST POSITION WHEN TOWING YOUR RV. Damage to the rear bed may result from traveling with the bed in the lowered position.

WARNING

DO NOT LOAD MORE THAN 600 LBS. ON THE BED. Damage to the bed lift mechanism and personal injury may result from overloading.
To lower the top bunk

1. To lower the top bunk, press the BED UP switch on the Garage Command Center.

**NOTE:** To prevent damage to the underside of the upper bunk, ALWAYS check that there is nothing other than bedding on the lower bunk BEFORE operating bed(s).

2. The lower bunk will rise up to the underside of the upper bunk and lift the upper bunk off the four (4) travel pins.

3. After the upper bunk is lifted off the pins, PULL each of the four (4) pins and store.

4. PRESS the BED DOWN switch to lower both the upper & lower bunks. The upper bunk will stop in a preset position.

5. Continue to lower the bottom bunk to the desired position.

6. Reverse this process for raising the bunks for garage clearance and/or travel.

   • **FOR TRAVEL:** ALWAYS pin the upper bunks in the **highest** position. The lower bunks should be **low** to the deck floor.

Removable Sit & Sleep Sofa

- To change the bottom bed into the sofa position the bed must fully lowered.

- Grasp the center section of the bed and pull it upwards towards you. Push the sofa back towards the outside walls of the cargo area.

- To return it to the bed position, pull the sofa back forward, then push it back down into the bed position.

- To remove the lower seat bench, remove the front two clevis pins under the sofa bench and carefully pull the seat bench towards you (store the seat benches where they will not be damaged).

Power Rear Awning (If So Equipped)

The **Power Rear Awning** switch is located on the garage command center.

- **RETRACT** the awning to the travel position during windy or stormy weather conditions, or if you will be away from the RV for an extended period of time.

- Maintaining your awning in good condition can prevent costly repairs. It is very important to keep the awning clean, See page 155, Fabric Care.

*For more information, please refer to the awning manufacturer’s user manual.*
How to Set Up the Patio Rail Kit

1. Lower ramp door to level position.
   - Locate and secure both cables (one on each side of the ramp door) by lifting the ramp door up slightly, then
   - Secure both cable ends to the ramp door.
     ◦ Insert the pin through the bracket and
     ◦ Secure the safety clip on the end of the pin.

2. Your Patio Rail Kit is closed inside the unit. Find and unclasp the strap holding the kit together.

3. Unfold the railings
4. Slide the railing onto the keeper bases and lock in place.

5. Close and secure the gate with the latch. Pull the pin out to move the latch up or down.

6. Set up Patio Rail Kit
1. Remove the seat back cushions.

2. Lift up and out on the front edge of the sofa, uncovering the legs.
3. Fully extend the legs on both sides.
4. Pull the sofa forward and place the legs flat on the floor.
5. Pull the sofa back forward, and lay flat.

Sofa Converted to Bed.
Cleaning the Interior

To keep the value of your RV, perform regular maintenance using the proper materials and procedures.

- Check the component manufacturer’s information for the recommended cleaning agent.

Using the wrong cleaner may result in damage to the surfaces in your RV. To check if a cleaner will cause damage, test it in a small, out of sight area, or contact your dealer for assistance.

**DO NOT** use flammable liquids or sprays to clean your RV.

Cabinetry & Tables

- To keep cabinetry and tables looking like new, regularly dust the hardwood doors, cabinet fronts and tables.
- Use a soft cloth dampened with a cleaning polish or mild detergent solution.
- AVOID using ammonia based products or silicone oils as they may cause damage if used over a long period of time.
- Although the finish is durable and resistant to most household spills, they should be wiped up promptly to avoid any potential problems.
- Avoid prolonged exposure to direct sunlight, high temperatures or high humidity. These conditions can cause damage to both the finish and the wood itself.

Pantry

Your RV’s **load capacity** is designed by **weight**, NOT **volume**. All available storage space cannot necessarily be used.

- Use the pantry to store items you wish to take with you as you travel and camp.
- The cabinetry has been designed to accommodate normal camping items (i.e., paper plates, flatware, cookware, etc.) which are bulky but not necessarily heavy.
- Make sure that all pantry items are secured so that they do not shift during travel.
Paneling

- To clean, use a mild solution of soap and lukewarm water with a soft sponge or cloth.
- DO NOT use abrasive cleaners as they could cause the vinyl to scratch and turn dull.
- Grease spots and stubborn dirt can be cleaned off with an all-purpose spray.

Countertops

To prevent permanent damage:

- ALWAYS use hot pads or trivets under hot pans, dishes, or heat producing appliances such as frying pans.
- ALWAYS use a cutting board; never use a knife directly on the countertop.
- AVOID harsh chemicals such as drain cleaners, oven cleaners, etc.
- DO NOT leave cleaners with bleach on the surface. Wipe them off promptly.

Laminate countertops

Glass rings, food spills, water spots and smudges usually wipe off with a damp sponge. Stubborn stains can be removed with a general-purpose spray cleaner. Some stains can be removed by squeezing fresh lemon juice over the stain and allowing the juice to soak for approximately forty-five minutes. After 45 minutes, sprinkle baking soda over the lemon juice and rub with a soft cloth.

Solid surface countertops

Solid surface materials are easy to clean. Commercial solid surface cleaners, soapy water, or ammonia based cleaners will remove most dirt and residue from all types of finishes. AVOID window cleaners as they can leave a waxy build up that may dull the surface. A damp cloth followed by a dry towel will remove watermarks. Disinfect the surface periodically with diluted household bleach (one part water to one part bleach).

For additional information on the removal of difficult stains or surface damage repair, please refer to the countertop manufacturer’s user guide.
Flooring

• ALWAYS test cleaning agents for colorfastness in a hidden or inconspicuous area.

Carpet

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner with a revolving brush or beater bar. Be sure the vacuum does not have teeth, combs or rough edges as they may damage the carpet. It is important to remove loose soil and debris while it is on the surface. Heavily traveled areas (i.e., walkways, areas in front of the furniture) may be protected with small throw rugs to prolong the life of the carpet.

Some spills contain chemicals that will destroy carpet fibers and dyes. If you have doubts about what caused the spot, contact a professional carpet cleaner. Because of the additional dirt typically associated with camping, we recommend that you vacuum the carpet frequently. Have tough and deep stains professionally steam cleaned. Use spot removers for minor spills. Always test the carpet for color fastness in an inconspicuous area before using any product.

Vinyl flooring

Periodically vacuum or sweep to remove dirt and gritty particles. Although most common spills will not permanently stain the vinyl floors, they are usually easier to remove if wiped up before they set. Simply blot with a paper towel and wipe clean with a damp cloth. As part of a regular maintenance program, sponge mop the entire floor. Do not use dish detergents or vinegar and water because they will dull your floor.

To care for the vinyl floor covering, use a damp mop with water and a mild cleaner. DO NOT SOAK THE FLOORING. Use care to avoid wetting the carpet edges. To prevent the linoleum from yellowing, avoid cleaners that contain oil based solvents (i.e. any cleaners containing lemon oil, Murphy’s Oil Soap, etc.).

Free-Standing Table & Chairs

The free-standing dinette table can be positioned to seat up to four people. To prevent damage when traveling, the chairs must be fastened down securely, and the table must be closed into the travel position.
Furniture Upholstery

To retain the value of your RV, carefully maintain your furniture upholstery and keep the interior clean. Regularly vacuum the furniture using a soft brush attachment to remove any loose dirt or debris.

Fabric

Fabric should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled. For more information, refer to the specific furniture manufacturer’s care instructions.

Richloom Tough - Proper Care/Cleaning Guidelines

• Both PVC and Polyurethanes should be cleaned with a mild, *water-based* shampoo or soap.

• More stubborn stains can be cleaned with a mild, *non-alcohol-based*, cleaning fluid.

• Rinse with clean water afterwards.

Suede

• Suede should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled.

Vinyl

Vinyl should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled. If a spill does occur:

• **USE water-based cleaners ONLY.**

• **BLOT up the spot.**
  ◦ **DO NOT** rub it in, or saturate the area.

• **DO NOT use solvents.**
  ◦ Solvents may have an adverse reaction to the specific backing of your upholstery fabric.

• **DO NOT dry clean any vinyl components.**
  ◦ If they are dry cleaned, the vinyl on the reverse side will shrink, become hard and crack.

• **Clean the suede or vinyl upholstery ONLY as recommended.**
  ◦ Cleaning methods other than those listed, may produce undesired results and even damage the upholstery. *This type of damage is not warrantable.*
Recliner Sofa or Loveseat

Like a residential recliner, the recliner sofa or loveseat sections have controls allowing you to recline the individual sections. To revert each recliner section back to the upright position, gently apply pressure to the recliner leg rest. Refer to the furniture manufacturer’s care instructions for this product.

Hide-a-Bed Sofa

The hide-a-bed sofa functions much the same as a regular residential hide-a-bed sofa. To make the hide-a-bed sofa into a bed, lift up and out on the front edge of the sofa seat, uncovering the legs. Fully extend the legs on both sides. Pull the sofa forward and place the legs flat on the floor. Pull the sofa back forward, and lay flat. To convert the hide-a-bed back into the upright sofa position, reverse the process.

See page 176-177, Hide-A-Bed Sofa.

Safe

Your RV may have a safe installed in the closet. The safe is intended to help to safeguard valuable items; however, Grand Design RV cannot be held liable for loss of personal property that is placed within the safe. To secure items in the safe, utilize the key provided with the safe and lock it after placing items in the box. Store the key in a location away from the safe.

Decor Items

Decor Glass

Use a glass cleaner to remove smudges, smears and spots. If there is any decorative etching on the decor glass, use care when cleaning around that area.

Window treatments, curtains, blinds and shades

Dust occasionally with a vacuum and soft brush attachment. Professionally clean only.
ABS Plastic
ABS plastic components will retain their original beauty with reasonable care. Dust and wipe clean with soft, damp cloth or chamois, wiping gently. Do not use gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compound to clean ABS plastic. AVOID using Citrus or biodegradable cleaners containing D-Limonene; these cleaners may damage plastic materials.

Fiberglass Shower Walls
To clean the walls of the fiberglass shower, use a mild detergent soap and warm water. NEVER use gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compound to clean the fiberglass.

Sink & Shower Fixtures
Use mild dish soap and water to clean these fixtures. Do not use harsh chemicals or sprays. A mild solution of vinegar and water works well to remove hard water spots and stains from the sink or shower fixture.

Stainless Steel Sink & Appliances
• DO NOT use abrasive cleaners, scouring pads or steel wool.
• DO NOT use oven cleaner or any cleaners containing bleach or chloride.
• Hard water that evaporates on a Stainless Steel surface can leave spots.

1. Dampen a soft cloth in warm water mixed with a mild dish soap.
2. Wipe the surface. Clean with the grain, not across.
3. Rinse the cloth and wipe again.
4. Blot the surface dry with a towel to prevent water spots.

Glass cleaner or a cleaners made specifically for stainless steel may also be used. BEFORE cleaning the entire surface, test the cleaner on a small hidden area.
Exterior Care

The RV exterior is comprised of many different materials including; fiberglass gel-coat, automotive grade paint finishes, plastics, glass, sealant, and aluminum.

There is an increased chance of damage to the exterior finish, the longer a foreign substance remains on the surface. Frequent washing and waxing is the best way to protect your RV from this damage.

The following materials deposited on the RV's surface may result in corrosion, staining, and/or chemical spotting:

- Road Tar, Dirt, and Dust
- Road Salt and Sodium Chloride
- Bird Droppings / Bugs / Tree Sap
- Acid Rain / Industrial Fallout / Pollution
- UV Exposure and Moisture

Cleaning the Exterior

Frequent washings also protect your RV from environmental conditions, such as rain, snow and salt air.

- Wash your RV as soon as possible if it becomes contaminated with foreign material.
- Avoid parking under trees or near ocean sea salt.
- DO NOT scrape ice or snow from the painted surface, ALWAYS brush off the affected area.
- If anti-freeze, gasoline or any solvents are spilled on the painted surface, rinse the area with water immediately.
- Bugs and bird droppings should be rinsed off daily.

Washing

- DO NOT wash the RV in direct sunlight.
- Park in the shade and spray RV with water to remove dust.
- Next, using an ample amount of clean water and a sponge or car washing mitt, wash the RV from top to bottom.
- Use a mild car-washing soap if necessary.
- Rinse thoroughly and wipe dry with a chamois or soft cloth.
• Carefully clean the joints and flanges of the slideout, doors, etc. where dirt is likely to remain.

**NOTE:** Some types of hot water washing equipment apply heat and high pressure to the RV.

• Excessive **HEAT** can cause distortion or damage to resin parts.

• Excessive **PRESSURE** can flood the RV’s interior.

• DO NOT take your RV through automatic car washes.

• Avoid forcing water inside the RV, which could possibly damage component parts.

• Extreme caution should be used with any type of pressure sprayer around all attachments, doors, windows, appliance vents, etc.

• Keep the washing nozzle about 16 inches (40 cm) or more away from the RV body.

• When washing around the door, vent and glass areas, hold the nozzle at right angles to the surface.

• If chalking occurs, first wash and wax a small area to see if the luster returns.

• Have your dealer inspect the RV if the exterior becomes scratched, nicked or cracked.

**During cold weather**

*IF the slideout or door is frozen shut*, opening it by FORCE may tear off or crack its rubber gasket and *ruin* the weatherproof seal.

1. **INSTEAD**, pour warm water on the gasket to melt the ice.

2. **Then**, AFTER opening the slideout or door, wipe off the water thoroughly.

3. To prevent the weather stripping from freezing, treat it with a silicone spray.

4. **Salt and other chemicals spread on winter roads can have a detrimental effect on the RV’s underbody.**

   **If your RV is exposed to these conditions:**

   ◦ Wash the exterior of your RV and carefully spray the underbody with a high-pressure hose, remove any mud or debris that could trap and hold salt or moisture.

   ◦ After washing your RV, wipe off all water drops from the rubber parts around the slideout and doors.
Cleaning the Exterior, Continued

**Waxing your RV**

Wax your RV once or twice a year, or when painted surfaces do not shed water well. Use a soft cloth to apply a small amount of wax to the painted surfaces. After the wax has dried, polish the RV with a dry, soft cloth. Do not wax your RV in direct sunlight. Wax it after the surfaces have cooled. Do not apply wax to any area having a flat black finish as it can cause discoloration. If the finish has been stained with wax, wipe off the area with a soft cloth and warm water.

When waxing the area around the various openings, do not apply any wax on the weatherstrip. If it is stained with wax, the weatherstrip cannot maintain a weatherproof seal around the opening.

**Polishing your RV**

If painted surfaces have been severely damaged and have lost their original luster and color tone, polish the surface lightly with a fine polishing compound. Avoid limiting your polishing to the damaged surface only; polish a somewhat wider area, moving the polishing cloth in one direction. After polishing, flush the compound from the surface and apply a coat of wax to regain a beautiful luster.

**Damaged paint**

Touch up small cracks and scratches in the paint coat of the FW front cap as soon as possible with touch-up film or paint. Carefully check the body areas facing the road and the tires for damage to the paint coat caused by flying stones, etc. Purchase automotive touch-up paint locally, use the closest paint match available. *See page 189, Trailer Frame.*

**Cleaning plastic parts**

Use a sponge or chamois to clean plastic parts. Use warm water and a soft cloth or chamois to remove any white residue from dark colored plastic surfaces. Do not use a scrubbing brush or other hard tools as they may damage the plastic surface. Do not use wax containing abrasives that may damage the plastic surface.

**Chrome parts**

To prevent chrome parts from spotting or corroding, wash with water, dry thoroughly, and apply a non-abrasive automotive wax. If the chrome is severely damaged or pitted, use a commercially available chrome polish product.
Exterior Roof

To maintain your warranty, inspect all roof sealant every three (3) months for voids, gaps and cracks then re-seal as needed (See below). Wash the Superflex roof with water and a mild detergent twice a year and clean and inspect the roof vents.

- **DO NOT** use sharp tools (putty knife) that could puncture the Superflex roof membrane.

- If any voids or cracking are found, remove any loose sealant by hand.

- If the loose sealant cannot be pulled off by hand, it still has good adhesion to the Superflex roof membrane and should be left alone.

- Using a medium-bristled scrub brush, clean all areas to be resealed with a non-abrasive household cleaner, such as Top Job® or Spic-N-Span®.

- This area must be dry before continuing.

- **Solvents should NOT be used during cleaning.** Solvents can damage existing sealant and may weaken plastic roof components.

- Apply a generous amount of **Alpha Systems 1010 Non-Sag Sealant** over top of any existing sealant needing resealed.

- **PLEASE NOTE:** ONLY ALPHA SUPPLIED SEALANTS SHOULD COME IN CONTACT WITH THE SUPERFLEX ROOF MEMBRANE.

Sidewall Vents

Water heater, furnace and refrigerator exterior doors need to be kept clean and free of obstructions while the appliances (if so equipped) are in use. Inspect the refrigerator and holding tank vents for blockages from bird or insect nests, spiderwebs, leaves, etc.

**WARNING**

As with the surface of any roof, a rubber roof can be very slippery, especially when wet. If you go up on your roof we recommend extreme caution and suggest that you navigate the roof on your hands and feet. This distributes the weight more evenly and helps reduce the possibility of falling.

**NOTICE**

Failure to properly maintain or re-seal your RV may result in serious water damage to the roof and other parts of the RV. This damage is not covered by the Limited Base Warranty and the Limited Structural Warranty.

**NOTICE**

DO NOT use petroleum distillates to clean the roof as they may cause permanent damage.
Sealants

Sealants perform a very important function and should be inspected closely and regularly maintained. We incorporate many different types of sealants, including butyl/putty, black butyl-encapsulated foam, silicone (clear and colored), roof sealant and foam. In general, sealants do not have a “set” lifetime. Varying environmental factors affect the pliability and adhesiveness of sealants.

Sealants may become damaged due to exposure to the elements, freezing temperatures, ultraviolet, and air pollution. If deteriorated, repair immediately to prevent damage. A quick walk around the RV before leaving may help prevent potential problems during trips and vacations. Your dealer service or parts manager can help you obtain the correct sealant(s).

You or your dealer MUST:

- **INSPECT** all sealants, every three (3) months. Make sure to check the roof and all four sides of the RV including all moldings, doors, vents and exterior attachments.
- **REPLACE** the sealant if you notice any cracks, peeling, voids, gaps, breaks, looseness or any sign of physical deterioration.
- **RESEAL** at least one time each year as preventative maintenance. Always use the same type of sealant that was removed.

If you notice water inside the RV, immediately have the dealer check for the source of the leak. Failure to correct the leak may result in serious damage to your RV; this damage may not be warrantable.

If you have questions and/or need assistance with sealing your RV, consult with your RV dealer.

Roof Ladder

A folding roof ladder is standard equipment on your Momentum. The RV roof has decking under the rubber roof membrane to allow you to walk on the roof (with caution) to do maintenance.

- **ALWAYS** check that both locking pins are in place when the ladder is in the stowed (travel) position.
Rear Bumper

- The rear bumper of your RV is NOT designed to carry cargo.
- Extra weight behind the trailer’s axles may reduce the Hitch Weight (leading to adverse handling conditions from wind gusts and passing traffic).
- Items that extend beyond the bumper will place undo strain on the bumper.
- Over time, weight added to the bumper will cause damage from the motion created while traveling.

Trailer Frame

Rocks, sand, road debris, climate (salt air exposure) and especially ice inhibiting chemicals used during the winter months will damage your frame’s painted exterior, inviting rust and other deterioration.

- Regularly inspect all exposed areas of the frame.
- To maintain protection, clean and repaint any chipped areas or rust spots.

Windows

Any ventilating window may permit water inside, especially during heavy rainstorms. Condensation will also cause water to accumulate on windows and in the tracks. Normally the window glass can be cleaned with a sponge and water.

- Use glass cleaner to remove wax, oil, grease, dead insects, etc.
- After washing the glass, wipe it dry with a clean, soft cloth.
Winterizing / RV Storage Preparation

To help prevent problems, prepare your RV for extended periods of non-use. This will also make it easier to get your RV ready for the next camping trip or season.

- **In colder climates, BEFORE storing for the winter, be sure your RV’s plumbing system is properly Winterized to prevent costly freeze-ups.**

1. CHECK your roof and other surfaces for any damage or potential leaks that could go unnoticed until it is too late.
2. CLOSE all windows and roof vents.
3. TURN OFF 12-volt DC/120-volt AC/propane to the refrigerator; defrost and clean.
4. USE crumpled newspaper or open boxes of baking soda in the refrigerator to eliminate odors during storage.
5. SHUT OFF the propane cylinder valve(s).
6. COVER all external outlets/vents (furnace, exhaust, etc.) to prevent mice or other rodents from entering.
7. COVER the roof air conditioner (if so equipped).
8. DISCONNECT 120-volt AC power to the RV.
9. DO NOT use the leveling legs during storage.
10. DRAIN all water lines.
11. FLUSH, then DRAIN ALL holding tanks; fresh water, gray water, black water and the water heater.
12. DISCONNECT the battery cables from the auxiliary battery terminals & REMOVE all batteries from the RV.
   ○ Store batteries in a place where they will not freeze. *If a battery is frozen, it will no longer hold a proper charge.*
13. WASH the interior and the exterior of your RV thoroughly.
14. STORE your RV indoors, under a roof or purchase a *breathable* cover for use during storage.
15. TO PREVENT weather checking and other UV damage, cover tires that are exposed to sunlight.

**Snow removal**

During the storage period, remove snow from the top of your RV to prevent damage to the unit’s structure.
Suggested Maintenance Checklist

Here is a quick reference list of suggested areas for regular maintenance. Review all manufacturer’s operators manuals supplied with your RV to perform the maintenance items listed.

Prior to first trip

• INSPECT and reseal as needed.

• HAVE your dealer CHECK the propane system for leaks.

• CHECK wheel lug nuts at specified intervals to the listed torque specifications, RE-TORQUE as needed.

• SANITIZE the fresh water system.

• TEST all safety alarms.

First two hundred miles

• CHECK wheel nuts at specified intervals to listed torque values. RE-TORQUE as needed.

• HAVE a Qualified Service Technician adjust the brakes.

Each trip

• INSPECT and re-seal as needed.

• CHECK the auxiliary battery.

• CHECK running lights.

• CHECK tire pressure and wear, including spare.
  ◦ The tires should be COLD when checking the tire pressure.

• CHECK wheel nuts at specified intervals to the listed torque values. RE-TORQUE as needed.

• FLUSH out water heater tank.

• TEST the brakes.

• TEST all safety alarms.
# Required Maintenance Schedule

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Item</th>
<th>Every trip</th>
<th>Monthly</th>
<th>Every 3 months</th>
<th>Every 6 months</th>
<th>Annually</th>
<th>Before / After Storage</th>
<th>As Required</th>
<th>Procedure to be Performed:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appliances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check settings &amp; adjustments per manufacturer’s guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Make sure burner tubes/vents are clean/unobstructed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean &amp; sanitize.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awnings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wash with warm water and mild detergent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean &amp; lube moving parts with WD40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axles / Suspension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check U-bolts, springs &amp; hangers for damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check torque - all bolts (see mfg. guide for specs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage Doors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Confirm that doors seal tight and are not leaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spray lock tumblers with dry graphite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes / Wheel Hubs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Have brakes and hubs inspected by a certified RV service technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check amp draw/shoe wear/adjustment (see mfg. guide for specs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lube bearings (as needed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical System</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check and service batteries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Test all GFI outlets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Service generator (if equipped) per manufacturer’s manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Door(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Make sure door latches and locks function properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lube hinges with light oil, WD40, or comparable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjust screen door and latch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Egress Window(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Open and close the Emergency Egress Window(s) each trip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Steps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean and lubricate (lithium spray).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Fiberglass / Metal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wash with warm water &amp; mild detergent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Apply non-abrasive wax (except on decals).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Moldings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect sealant for voids/gaps/cracks and re-seal as necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame / Underbelly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check for damage, loose wires and debris. Clean as necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check frame for chipped paint and rust, repaint as necessary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Required Maintenance Schedule

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Item</th>
<th>Every Trip</th>
<th>Monthly</th>
<th>Every 3 months</th>
<th>Every 6 months</th>
<th>Annually</th>
<th>Before / After Storage</th>
<th>As Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hitch / Coupler</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check for damage &amp; wear.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean and lubricate (with grease)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP System</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Have system tested for leaks by a qualified dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Have pressure and regulator setting checked by a qualified dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing System</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check hoses, fittings and pipes for leak. Tighten as required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lubricate termination gate valve cables (WD40 or lithium grease).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof And Roof Attachments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect sealant for voids / gaps / cracks and re-seal as necessary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean roof with water and mild detergent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean and lube roof vent mechanisms with light oil.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Equipment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check operation of detectors - recharge and replace batteries every 6 months if equipped.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Test and check fire extinguisher for proper charge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Test and confirm egress (exit) window(s) function properly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide Rooms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Slideout room adjustment performed by a certified RV service technician.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check slide roof for debris - clear as necessary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check and clean all seals.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels &amp; Tires</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check wheel lugs for proper torque.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect tires for wear / damage / etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Check tire inflation pressure (see tire label for pressures).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Procedure to be Performed:**

Maintenance schedules are *minimum* requirements. Extended use, extreme temperatures, high humidity or other extreme conditions will require more frequent maintenance.
Basic Troubleshooting

**Air Conditioner (Roof)**

**Will not operate**
- Make sure unit is turned on.
- Check circuit breakers in coach.
- Have your dealer check to see if there is proper voltage from shoreline or generator.

**Unit runs, but coil freezes and compressor cycles too soon**
- Control setting may be too low, cycles too soon.
- Make sure the filter is clean and unobstructed.
- Have the coolant level checked by a qualified service facility.

**Does not get cold enough**
- Start the unit before the day gets too hot.
- To offset heat gain:
  - Close all windows and blinds.
  - Keep entrance doors closed.
  - Use awnings.
  - Avoid using heat-producing appliances.
- Make sure the outside coil is not blocked or damaged.
- Have your dealer check to make sure you have the proper voltage.

Should your air conditioner still not work after completing the above checks, contact a qualified service facility to perform more extensive testing.

**Electrical Power**

**No AC power to RV**
- Check circuit breakers at power center. The 120-volt circuit breaker may be off or tripped.
- Have a dealer check that there is power to the shoreline receptacle.
Furnace

**Furnace does not ignite and/or cycles frequently**
- Check that propane tank is full.
- Remove any obstruction over furnace exhaust.
- Inspect exhaust tube for any obstructions.
- Check fuse in fuse panel and replace if necessary.
- Make sure that return air grill is unobstructed. Remove anything that is stored in furnace compartment that could block airflow.
- Check that heat outlet registers are open and that register openings are unobstructed.
- Make sure that 12-volt power is present.
- Contact your dealer if the problem persists.

**Generator (If So Equipped)**

**Starter engages while holding down the start button, but generator does not start**
- Generator may be out of fuel. (Generator will not operate when the fuel tank is less than ¼ full).
- Generator may be low on oil. Check the oil level.

**When the generator start button is pushed, nothing happens**
- Check that the battery disconnect switch button is pushed.
- Check 12 Volt fuse on generator.
- Reset circuit breaker if necessary.
- Contact your dealer or a qualified RV technician if problem is not resolved.

**Generator starts, but lacks electrical power**
- Breaker switches may be off or tripped at generator. Reset breaker if necessary.
- Breaker may be off or tripped inside power center. Reset main breaker if necessary.

**Generator just makes clicking sound when trying to start**
- Battery condition may be low. Recharge if necessary.
- Check for poor ground or battery connection.
Hydraulic System - Manual Override (If So Equipped)

**Question:** When would I need to manually override the hydraulic system?

**Answer:** In the event your RV loses electric power.

**Question:** Will this work if I have a leaking hydraulic hose?

**Answer:** This depends on the severity of the leak. *If there is a rupture in the hydraulic line, this process WILL NOT work. You will need to contact a mobile service for assistance.*

**Tools Needed**
- A cordless drill with a Philips screw bit (any size)
- A 5/32” Allen wrench

**Valve directions**
- Rotating a hydraulic system override valve *clockwise* will open it.
- Rotating a hydraulic system override valve *counter-clockwise* will close it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valve</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Typical Location on the Solitude</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Extend/Retract the Front Landing Legs.</td>
<td>Forward Door Side LP Compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Extend/Retract the Door Side Leveling Legs.</td>
<td>Front Compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Extend/Retract the Off-Door Side Leveling Legs.</td>
<td>Front Compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Open/Close the Slide Room Valve Block (Which Houses Valve E &amp; F)</td>
<td>Front Compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Extend/Retract the Hydraulic Door Side Slide Room</td>
<td>Forward Door Side LP Compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Extend/Retract the Hydraulic Off-Door Side Slide Room</td>
<td>Forward Door Side LP Compartment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Valves A, E & F are located in the Forward, Door-Side LP Compartment

Valves B, C, D & Hydraulic Pump G are located in the Front Compartment
To manually retract the slideout rooms and landing/leveling jacks, you MUST complete the process in the following order:

1. Slideouts, one at a time (using IRC controls)
2. Rear Stabilization Jacks
3. Hitch the RV to your tow vehicle
4. Retract Front Landing Gear

**Step 1. Retract the hydraulic slideouts**

1.1 REMOVE the protective directional sticker on the top of the pump motor (G).

1.2 INSERT the Philips head side of the screw bit into your cordless drill – the hex end is a perfect fit into the drive end of the pump motor.

1.3 LOCATE the valve manifold. On Grand Design RV hydraulic systems, the slide valve is located on the top of the manifold next to the blue pressure retract switch (D).

1.4 OPEN the valve by inserting the 5/32” Allen wrench into the top of the valve and carefully rotating *clockwise* to open the valve. We recommend using just your thumb and index finger.

1.5 ISOLATE the individual slides by closing all by one of the IRC valves. Each valve controls one side of the RV (E & F).

1.6 CONNECT your cordless drill to the end of the pump motor and rotate *counter-clockwise* (unscrew) to actuate the slide. Continue rotating the drill until the slide is fully retracted and sealed.

1.7 REPEAT process by working through the IRC controls.

1.8 Once all hydraulic slides are retracted,
   - CLOSE the slide valve (D) by turning the 5/32” Allen wrench *counter-clockwise* until finger tight (thumb and index finger).
Hydraulic System - Manual Override, Continued

**Step 2. Retract the Rear Stabilization Jacks**

2.1 On Grand Design RV hydraulic systems, the rear stabilizer jack valves are located on the bottom of the manifold below the pressure switch and the slide valve (B & C).

2.2 Begin on the bottom left valve. OPEN the valve by inserting the 5/32" Allen wrench into the valve and carefully rotating *clockwise* to open the valve.

2.3 CONNECT your cordless drill to the end of the pump motor and rotate *counter-clockwise* (unscrew) to actuate the slide.

• CONTINUE rotating the drill until the stabilizer jacks on the door side are fully retracted. Once fully retracted, close the valve finger tight.

2.4 REPEAT the process with the opposite valve until the jacks are fully retracted and the valve is returned to the closed position.

**Step 3. Hitch the RV to your tow vehicle**

3.1 LOCATE the valve on your front landing gear. You can access through your door-side propane compartment door (A).

3.2 OPEN the valve with your 5/32" Allen wrench and RAISE your unit (turn drill clockwise) to hitch height.

3.3 CLOSE the valve.

3.4 POSITION tow vehicle under the pin box until connected.

• If needed, REPEAT Steps 3.2 and 3.3, until the receiver is fully engaged to the kingpin.

**Step 4. Retract Front Landing Gear**

4.1 RUN the cordless drill counterclockwise until the front landing gear are fully retracted.

4.2 CLOSE the valve.
Interior Lights

Lights flicker
- Loose or defective bulb. Tighten or replace as needed.
- Converter is overheating. Open the cover to cool down and reduce the load by turning off some 12-volt lights.

Lights dim or are half bright
- Low battery connection. Check battery condition and recharge if necessary.
- Possible converter malfunction. Have converter checked by an authorized service center.
- Possible loss of ground. Check for loose wire connection.

Microwave

Will not operate
- Door open or timer OFF. Close door and turn ON timer.
- No power to oven. Check power supply and circuit breaker.

Monitor Panel

No lights on panel when switch is pressed
- Check battery voltage and condition.
- Check fuse at the battery; if fuse is good have a dealer or qualified RV technician check the condition of panel.

Holding tank lights deliver false readings (i.e. 1/3 or 2/3 indication)
- Verify tank is empty.
- Debris may be built up across probes.
  - CLEAN and FLUSH tank using a solution of two-parts vinegar mixed to one-part water.

Propane indicator display indicates E or F all the time
- Ensure propane gas tank is full.
- If display reads $F$, check the wiring or sending unit for malfunction.
- Have it inspected by a certified technician.
Outside Receptacle

No power to outside receptacle

- Make sure you have power to the shoreline.
- Check breaker on generator.
- GFCI receptacle switch may be OFF or tripped.
  - Re-Set GFCI at receptacle in bathroom or kitchen.
- Check the breaker in the power center or panel box.
- Contact a dealer or qualified RV technician if problem is not resolved.

Oven

Oven slow to heat up, poor baking, poor ignition of burners, pilots won’t stay lit, popping sound from top burners, carbon on pilot shield or burner flame too low or too high

- A defective Gas Pressure Regulator may cause these conditions. Have the regulator tested by your gas dealer or a certified RV technician.

Top burner or oven burner won’t light or won’t stay lit

- Check position of top burners and flash tubing.
- Clean clogged burner ports with a toothpick.
- See Oven Owner’s Manual for proper care and maintenance.

Gas smell

- Check all connections with leak detector solution.

Food burns on the bottom

- Oven too full for proper circulation. Use smaller pans or put less food in the oven.
Propane Gas

Smell gas in or around unit

- Propane tanks may be overfilled.

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE

1. Extinguish any open flames, pilot lights and all smoking materials.
2. Do not touch electrical switches.
3. Shut off the propane supply at the container valve(s) or propane supply connection.
4. Open doors and other ventilating openings.
5. Leave the area until odor clears.
6. Have the propane system checked and leakage source corrected before using again.

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN EXPLOSION RESULTING IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY

Refrigerator

The control panel lights are not illuminated

- Check coach circuit breakers and GFCI receptacle.
- Verify that refrigerator is plugged into the 120-volt outlet.
- If using propane gas, verify house batteries have adequate charge.

Lights are illuminating, but no cooling

- Use a proper power source that is available and cooling operation to specification.
- Make sure the refrigerator unit is level.
- Allow sufficient time for proper cool down and try to load with food that is already cold.
- Have a qualified RV technician check that the vents and chimney at the rear of the refrigerator are clear and unobstructed.
- Have a qualified RV technician make sure the burner jets or burners are not dirty or damaged.
- Have a qualified RV technician check the fuses in the black electrical box on the rear of the refrigerator.
Refrigerator, Continued

Heavy frost buildup on the evaporator fins
• Defrost the freezer and refrigerator.
• Have the refrigerator checked by your dealer or a qualified RV technician.

Running Lights

Running lights not working
• Blown fuse. Replace fuse with one of the same ampere rating.
• Bad bulbs. Replace the bulbs with new.

Slideout

Room move in and out very slowly, binds or squeaks
• Lubricate the slide-out tubes and rollers with light spray lube.

Water is getting in at the bottom corners of the room
• Verify that the exterior seals are against the room at the top and not turned in when the room is out (HORIZONTAL SEAL OVERLAPS VERTICAL). Also, check for voids in the seal on the slide roof and side panels.
• Make sure weep hole in ramp pan is open and unobstructed.

Room will not move in or out
• Check the auto-resetting fuse located by the slideout motor. See the manufacturer’s manual.
• Check battery condition and state of charge. Recharge if necessary.
Rollers leave tracks in the carpet as the room extends

- This is normal. There are many pounds of weight pressing these rollers down on the carpet and rollers will compress the nap of the carpet down. Raking the nap or vacuuming will solve the problem.

Termination Valve

Termination valve leaks

- Debris keeps valve from seating. Clear debris from and around valve O-ring set.
- Bad gasket. Have your dealer or qualified RV technician replace gasket with new.

TV Antenna

Poor TV reception

- Antenna Power switch is OFF. Turn ON power switch.
- Bad connections at TV or wall plate. Make sure the connections are good at both TV and wall plate.
- Cut or torn cable. Have your dealer or qualified RV technician replace bad cable where needed at TV and antenna.

Waste Tank

Waste tank (black) will not drain

- Build up or debris in tank. Check for buildup in tank at stool.
- Always use a minimum amount of biodegradable RV toilet paper.
- Always use plenty of water when flushing.
- Check termination valve for proper operation.
Water Heater

Water heater will not fire up
• Check for obstructions in burner tube and exhaust.
• Check 12 Volt power for possible blown fuse.
• Bad circuit board. See your dealer.

Pressure & temperature relief valve weeping
• Weeping or dripping at the relief valve, while water heater is running, does NOT mean it is faulty.

There is an odor that smells like rotten eggs
• If your fresh water source has a rotten egg odor, you will need to find another source of fresh water before flushing or refilling the entire RV water storage system.

To remove the hydrogen sulfide (rotten egg) odor:
1. TURN OFF your main water supply; that is, your pump or your water hookup source.
2. DRAIN your water heater tank by removing the drain plug. Approximately two quarts of water will remain in the bottom of the tank.
   ◦ If the water drains slowly or sporadically (instead of flowing freely), OPEN the Relief Valve to allow air into the tank.
3. If the water still does not flow freely, take a small gauge wire or coat hanger and push through the drain opening to eliminate any obstructions.
4. AFTER completely draining the tank, FLUSH the entire system with a solution of 2-parts vinegar / 1-part water, from the water inlet all the way to the holding tank.
5. If you decide to use air pressure (55 PSI max.), it may be applied either through the inlet or outlet on the rear of the tank. It may also be applied through the Relief Valve port.
   - First remove the relief valve. You may then insert your air pressure through the relief valve support flange.
   - With the drain valve OPEN, the air pressure will force the remaining water out of the tank.
   - If air pressure is unavailable, you may FLUSH the tank with fresh water. Water should be pumped into the tank with the assistance of the on board water pump or with the assistance of external water pressure.
   - External pressure may be pumped into the unit either through the inlet or outlet found on the rear of the water tank, or using the relief valve inlet located on the front of the unit.

6. CONTINUE this flushing process for approximately five (5) minutes allowing ample time for the fresh water to agitate the stagnant water on the bottom of the tank and force the deposits through the drain opening.

7. AFTER steps 1-6 (above) are complete, CLOSE the drain plug and the Relief Valve. REFILL the tank with fresh water, CIRCULATE, and RINSE.

If you use your vehicle frequently or for long periods of time, flushing the water heater several times a year will prolong the life of the water heater storage tank.
**Water Pump**

**Pump will not start**
- Check that house battery disconnect switch is ON.
- Check pump switch at monitor panel.
- Check fuse in power center.
- Check to see if water is frozen.

**Will not prime, sputters (no discharge, but the motor runs)**
- Check that there is a sufficient amount of fresh water,
  - Use the Monitor Panel to check the fresh water tank fill level.
- Check that there is not trapped air in the hot water heater.
- Check for frozen water lines or water tank.

**Pump will not shut off, runs when faucet is closed**
- Turn off the pump or city water supply.
- Check for damp areas around plumbing appliances.
- Check plumbing for leaks
- Inspect toilet for leaky valves.
- Have the pump checked by your dealer or a qualified RV technician.

**Water System**

**Wet areas near water connections, pump runs while the faucets are closed, and no other fresh water fixtures are being used.**
- There is a possible leak,
- CLOSE all low point water drains and tank drains.
- TURN OFF all fixtures.
- Check all fixtures and connections for tightness.
  - DO NOT over tighten fittings as this may cause additional leakage.
**AC ELECTRICITY**—Alternating current also known as shoreline power. For purposes of this manual, it refers to 120-volt AC (abbreviated 120 VAC).

**AMP**—Short for ampere, the electric current unit of measure. RV sites with electric hookup will specify the maximum amps supported, which generally come in units of 20, 30, or 50 amps. The RV power connector must match the various plugs of the site amp rating.

**ANODE ROD**—An anode rod, when used in a water heater, attracts corrosion causing products in the water. These products attack the anode rod instead of the metal tank itself. The anode rod should be inspected yearly and changed when it is reduced to about 1/4 of its original size. The rods are used in steel water heater tanks - an aluminum tank has an inner layer of anode metal to accomplish the same thing. Anode rods should not be installed in aluminum tanks!

**AUXILIARY BATTERY**—For purposes of this manual, the term refers to the 12-volt DC group 27 deep cycle battery (customer purchased) that should be installed in your RV.

**AWNING**—A roof-like structure made of canvas or other artificial materials which extends from the RV body to provide shade. Awnings are generally placed over entrances. Some extend and stow manually while others are operated electrically.

**BLACK WATER**—Term associated with the sewage holding tank. The toilet drains directly into this tank.

**BLUE BOY**—Also known as a honey pot. Refers to a portable waste holding tank that has wheels on one end. These tanks often are manufactured out of blue plastic, hence the nickname.

**BOON DOCKING**—Also known as dry camping. Camping without electrical and water hookups.

**BREAKAWAY SWITCH**—An electrical switch on trailers designed to engage the breaks in case the trailer breaks away from the tow vehicle. The switch is connected by a cable to the tow vehicle. Breakaway is detected when the switch cable is pulled out during vehicle separation.

**BRAKE CONTROLLER**—A device (customer supplied) mounted under the dash of a towing vehicle to control the braking system of the RV. Most brake actuators are based on a time delay application; the longer the brakes are applied tighter the trailer brakes react.

**BRITISH THERMAL UNIT (BTU)**—Measurement of heat that is the quantity required to raise the temperature of one pound of water 1°F. RV air-conditioners and furnaces are BTU-rated.

**CAMBER (WHEEL ALIGNMENT)**—The number of degrees each wheel is off of vertical. Looking from the front, tops of wheels farther apart than bottoms means “positive camber”. As the load pushes the front end down, or the springs get weak, camber would go from positive to none to negative (bottoms of wheels farther apart than tops).
Glossary

**CAMPER**—For purposes of this manual, this term refers to your fifth wheel RV.

**CAMPING**—An outdoor recreational activity involving the spending of one or more nights in a tent, primitive structure or RV at a campsite with the purpose of getting away from civilization and enjoying nature.

**CAMPSITE**—The term usually means an area where an individual or family might go camping.

**CARBON MONOXIDE**—A colorless, odorless and poisonous gas.

**CARGO WEIGHT**—The actual weight of all items added to the Curb Weight of the vehicle or trailer. This includes personal cargo, optional equipment, and tongue or king pin weight.

**CARGO CARRYING CAPACITY (CCC)**—Equal to GVWR minus each of the following: UVW, full fresh (potable) water weight (including water heater), full propane weight and SCWR.

**CITY WATER**—Term associated with the water supply you hook up to at the campsite. It is called city water because water is pulled from a central outside source (like a city) and not the fresh water tank.

**CONDENSATION**—A result of warm moisture laden air contacting the cold window glass. Keeping a roof vent open helps to reduce the humidity levels. Added roof vent covers help to prevent cold air from dropping down through the vent while still allowing moist air to escape. Using the roof vent fan when showering or the stove vent fan when cooking also helps prevent excess moisture buildup.

**CONVERTER**—A device that converts 120 volt A/C (alternating current) to 12 volt DC (direct current). The RV devices mostly run on 12 volt DC power that is supplied by the battery, which allows the RV to function independently. When “shore power” (an electrical supply) is available, the converter changes the voltage from 120 to 12 volt to supply the appliances and to recharge the battery.

**CURB WEIGHT**—The actual weight of a vehicle or trailer, including all standard equipment, full fuel tanks, full fresh water tanks, full propane bottles, and all other equipment fluids, but before taking on any persons or personal cargo.

**CURBSIDE**—This refers to the side of the camper that faces the curb when parked. Also referred to as the door side or DS.

**DC ELECTRICITY**—Direct current also known as auxiliary battery power. For purposes of this owner’s manual, it refers to 12-volt DC (abbreviated 12 VDC).

**DEALER**—For purposes of this manual, this refers to the independent dealer authorized to sell and/or service your camper by Grand Design RV. This term will be used in this context unless specified otherwise.

**DINETTE**—Booth-like dining area. Table usually drops to convert unit into a bed at night.

**DRAIN TRAP**—This is the curve that is in all drains. Water is trapped in the curve and creates a barrier so tank odors cannot escape through the drain.
**DRY CAMPING**—Camping when there is no city water hookup or shore power (i.e., using only the water and power available in the camper and not from any other source).

**DRY WEIGHT**—The actual weight of a vehicle or trailer containing standard equipment without fuel, fluids, cargo, passengers, or optional equipment.

**DSI (Direct Spark Ignition)**—This term refers to the method of igniting the main burner on a propane fired appliance. The burner is lit with an electric spark and the flame is monitored by an electronic circuit board. This ignition system is used in refrigerators, furnaces and water heaters. There is now a version of stove tops that light the burners with a DSI ignition.

**DUAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**—RV equipped with lights, appliances which operate on 12-volt battery power when self-contained, and with a converter, on 110 AC current when in campgrounds or with an on-board generator.

**DUALY**—A truck having two wheels on each side of the rear axle for a total of four wheels.

**DUCTED A/C**—Air conditioning supplied through a ducting system in the ceiling. This supplies cooling air at various vents located throughout the RV.

**DUCTED HEAT**—Warm air from the furnace supplied to various locations in the RV through a ducting system located in the floor. (Similar to house heating systems).

**DUMP STATION**—Site where you drain your gray water (waste) and your black water (sewage) tanks. In most states, it is illegal to drain your tanks anywhere except dump stations.

**DUMP VALVE**—Another name for the T-handle valve used to release and drain the black tank (sewage) and gray tank (waste).

**EGRESS WINDOW**—The formal name for the emergency escape window. Egress windows are identified by their labeling.

**FIFTH WHEEL (FW)**—A trailer and hitch configuration connected to the tow truck directly above the rear axle by way of a special fifth wheel hitch. This causes several feet of the connected trailer to hang over the tow truck, placing about 15 to 25% of the trailer’s weight on the rear axle of the truck. Commercial trucks and trailers use this hitch configuration. Also commonly spelled as 5th wheel.

**FIVER**—Another name for a fifth wheel RV.

**FRESH WATER**—The fresh water system provides potable water to the fresh water tank, kitchen sink, shower, bathroom lavatory, toilet, water heater and outside shower.

**FRESH WATER TANK**—Tank for holding fresh water for drinking, cooking, and bathing while not connected to a city water supply.

**FULL HOOK-UP SITE**—A campsite that has city water, shore power and sewer hook-ups or connections available.

**FULL TIMERS or FULL TIMING**—The term used for people who live in their RV full time, or at least the vast majority of their time.
Glossary

**GALLEY**—The kitchen in an RV.

**GENERATOR**—An engine powered device fueled by gasoline or diesel fuel, and sometimes propane, for generating 120-volt AC power.

**GENSET**—Abbreviation for generator set.

**GOOSENECK**—A trailer and hitch configuration connected to the tow truck directly above the rear axle by way of a standard ball hitch in the truck bed and a vertical, slender arm on front of the trailer. Gooseneck hitching is common on horse and utility trailers, but rarely found on RV’s.

**GRAY WATER**—Term associated with the waste water holding tank. Water from the sink drains, shower and washer/dryer (if so equipped) go into this tank.

**GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING (GAWR)**—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WEIGHT each axle assembly is designed to carry, as measured at the tires, therefore including the weight of the axle assembly itself. GAWR is established by considering the rating of each of its components (tires, wheels, springs, axle), and rating the axle on its weakest link. The GAWR assumes that the LOAD IS EQUAL ON EACH SIDE.

**GROSS CARRYING CAPACITY (GCC)**—Means the maximum carrying capacity of your camper. The GCC is equal to the GVWR minus UVW. The GCC will be reduced by the weight of fresh water or other tanks, propane, occupants, personal items or dealer installed accessories.

**GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING (GCWR)**—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE COMBINED WEIGHT of the tow vehicle and attached towed vehicle. GCWR assumes that both vehicles have functioning brakes, with exceptions in some cases for very light towed vehicles, normally less than 1,500 pounds. (Check your tow vehicle’s towing guide.)

**GROSS TRAILER WEIGHT RATING (GTWR)**—The MAXIMUM TOWED VEHICLE WEIGHT. Each component (receiver, drawbar, ball) of a ball-type hitch has its own rating. Some ball-type hitches have separate ratings when used with a weight distributing system.

**GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING (GVWR)**—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WEIGHT of the fully loaded vehicle, including liquids, passengers, cargo, and the tongue weight of any towed vehicle.

**HEAT EXCHANGER**—A device that transfers heat from one source to another. For example, there is a heat exchanger in your furnace - the propane flame and combustion products are contained inside the heat exchanger that is sealed from the inside area. Inside air is blown over the surface of the exchanger, where it is warmed and the blown through the ducting system for room heating. The combustion gases are vented to the outside air.

**HEAT STRIP**—A heat strip is an electric heating element located in the air conditioning system with the warm air distributed by the air conditioner fan and ducting system. They are typically 1500 watt elements (about the same wattage as an electric hair dryer) and have limited function. Basically they “take off the chill.”
HIGH PROFILE—A fifth-wheel trailer with a higher-than-normal front to allow more than 6 feet of standing room inside the raised area.

HITCH—The fastening unit that joins a movable vehicle to the vehicle that pulls it.

HITCH WEIGHT—The amount of the camper’s weight that rests on the tow vehicle. It should be approximately 12% - 15% with conventional trailers; approximately 18% -21% for fifth wheels.

HOLDING TANKS—There are three different holding tanks on most RVs; fresh water tank, gray water tank and black water tank. The fresh water tank holds fresh water that can be stored for later use. The gray water tank holds the waste water from the sinks and showers. The black water tank holds the waste from the toilet.

HONEY WAGON—Euphemism for the sewage pumping truck. Honey wagons are used to empty RV holding tanks in places where full hookups and dump stations are not available.

HOOKUPS—The ability of connecting to a campground’s facilities. The major types of hookups are electrical, water and sewer. If all three of these hookups are available, it is termed full hookup. Hookups may also include telephone and cable TV in some campgrounds.

HOUSE BATTERY—One or more batteries in a RV for operating the 12 volt lights, appliances, and systems. House batteries can be 12 volt units tied in parallel or pairs of 6 volt batteries tied in series (to double the voltage). The term house battery is of more significance in motor homes because they contain one or more other batteries for the operation of the engine, referred to as the chassis or starting batteries.

HULA SKIRT—Term used for a type of dirt skirt accessory some RVers use on the back of their motorhome to aid in the protection from debris thrown from their rear wheels to the vehicles directly behind them or being towed behind them. This dirt skirt is usually the length of the rear bumper and resembles a ‘short’ version of a Hawaiian ‘hula-skirt’, hence the term.

INVERTER—An inverter is a device that changes 12 volt battery power to 120 volt AC power. It is used when “boon docking” (camping without hookups) to power certain 120 VAC only devices like a microwave oven. The amount of available power depends on the storage capacity of the batteries and the wattage rating of the inverter.

IRON RANGER—A fee collection box used at campgrounds that do not have full time attendants. Upon entrance to the campground, you deposit your nightly fee(s) in an envelope with your name and site number and drop this in the collection box. At sometime during the day, a park ranger will make rounds of the campgrounds and collect the fees. You will often see these in National Park and National Forest campgrounds.

ISLAND QUEEN or ISLAND KING—A king or queen-sized bed with walking space on both sides.
Glossary

**JACKKNIFE**—90° angle obtained from turning/backing fifth wheel or travel trailer with tow vehicle. Jackknifing a short bed truck towing a fifth wheel without the use of a slider hitch or extended fifth wheel pin box can result in damage to the truck cab or breaking out the back window of the truck cab from the truck and fifth wheel “colliding”.

**KING PIN**—The pin by which a fifth wheel trailer attaches to the truck. It slides into the fifth wheel hitch and locks in place.

**KING PIN WEIGHT**—The actual weight pressing down on the fifth wheel hitch by the trailer. The recommended amount of King Pin Weight is 15%-25% of the GTW, also called Pin Weight.

**LAMINATE**—A sandwich of structural frame members, wall paneling, insulation and exterior covering, adhesive-bonded under pressure and/or heat to form the RV’s walls, floor and/or roof.

**LANDING GEARS**—See Leveling Jack.

**LEVELING**—Positioning the RV in camp so it will be level, using ramps (also called levelers) placed under the wheels, built-in scissors jacks, or power leveling jacks.

**LEVELING JACK**—A jack lowered from the underside of trailers and motor homes for the purpose of leveling the vehicle. A leveling jack is designed to bear a significant portion of the RV’s weight.

**LP GAS**—Liquefied Petroleum Gas, commonly written as “LP Gas”. Two examples of LP Gas are propane and butane. LP Gas is heavier than air in gas form and about half the weight of water in liquid form. LP gas is used to fuel appliances in the RV, such as the stove, oven, water heater and refrigerator. Propane tanks are usually rated as pounds or gallons.

**LOW POINT**—The lowest point in the plumbing. Drains are placed here so that water will drain out of the lower end of the camper when flushing or winterizing the water system. These drains must be closed when you fill the water tank.

**MOTORHOME (MH)**—A motor vehicle built on a truck or bus chassis and designed to serve as self-contained living quarters for recreational travel.

**NET CARRYING CAPACITY (NCC)**—The MAXIMUM WEIGHT of all personal belongings, food, fresh water, propane, tools, dealer installed accessories, etc., that can be carried by the RV.

**NON-POTABLE WATER**—Water NOT suitable for human consumption.

**OEM**—This refers to the original equipment manufacturer of the individual appliances or components.

**PARK MODEL**—A travel trailer that requires park facilities to function. It lacks holding tanks and dual-voltage appliances, requiring to be plugged into water, sewage, and electrical facilities. A park model is more of a small mobile home than a recreational vehicle, in appearance and function.

**PART TIMERS**—The term used for people who use their RV more than usual (more than just a few weekend trips a year), but who still use it less than full time.
**PATIO MAT**—Carpet or woven mat for use on ground outside of RV. Used whether or not a concrete patio pad is available where camping.

**PAYLOAD CAPACITY**—The maximum allowable weight that can be placed in or on a vehicle, including cargo, passengers, fluids and fifth-wheel or conventional hitch loads.

**PILOT**—A pilot is a small standby flame that is used to light the main burner of a propane fired appliance when the thermostat calls for heat. Pilots can be used in furnaces, water heaters, refrigerators, ovens and stove tops.

**PORPOISING**—A term used to define the up and down motion in an RV while traveling

**POWER SOURCE**—Also referred to as shore power, this refers to the receptacle outlet you are using to plug in your shoreline power cord. This can be a campsite power box or electrical box, a residential receptacle outlet specifically wired for your camper or a generator (customer supplied).

**PRIMITIVE SITE**—A campsite that may have city water, shore power or sewer hook-ups but not all of them; primitive sites may have no hook-ups or connections at all.

**PROPANE**—LPG, or liquefied petroleum gas, used in RVs for heating, cooking and refrigeration. Also called bottle gas, for manner in which it is sold and stored. This is the proper term in the RV industry when referring to “LP Gas.”

**PULL-THROUGH SITES**—Campsites you can drive through and park (without having to back up into the site).

**REFER**—Slang for “refrigerator”. Refrigerators are often found in either a “two-way” or “three-way” operating mode. Two-way: has a gas mode and an AC mode. Three-way: has a gas mode, AC mode, and 12v DC mode. The coolant used in RV refrigeration is ammonia. The two most common manufacturers of RV refrigerators are Norcold and Dometic.

**RIG**—What many RVers call their units.

**ROADSIDE** – The side of the trailer that faces the road when it is parked. Also called the Streetside, Off-Door Side or ODS.

**ROOF AIR CONDITIONING**—Air conditioning unit mounted on roof of RV, to cool the RV when it is parked. When moving, most RVs are cooled by separate air conditioning units which are components of the engine, or they may be cooled by a roof top if a proper size generator is installed.

**RV**—Short for Recreation Vehicle, a generic term for all pleasure vehicles which contain living accommodations. Multiple units are RVs and persons using them are RVers.

**RVDA**—Abbreviation for Recreational Vehicle Dealer’s Association.

**RVIA**—Abbreviation for Recreational Vehicle Industry Association

**SELF CONTAINED**—RV which needs no external electrical, drain or water hookup. Thus, it can park overnight anywhere. Of course, self-contained units can also hook up to facilities when at campgrounds.
SANITIZATION—Refers to the camper’s fresh water system that has been sanitized with chlorine bleach before use or after storage.

SHORELINE POWER CORD—This is the electrical power cord that runs from the camper to the campsite shore power outlet.

SLEEPING CAPACITY WEIGHT RATING (SCWR)—The manufacturer’s designated number of sleeping positions multiplied by 154 pounds (70 kilograms).

SLIDEOUT—A compartment added to an RV to increase interior space. It slides into the body during travel and slides out when parked.

SNOWBIRD—Term for someone in a northern climate that heads “south” in winter months.

STINKY SLINKY—Slang for the sewer hose, constructed from a spiral wire covered with vinyl. One end attaches to the RV piping and the other into the local sewer dump facilities.

STREETSIDE—The side of the trailer that faces the street when parked. Also called the Roadside, Off-Door Side or ODS.

SURGE PROTECTOR—Device (customer supplied) that is installed at the power supply location designed to prevent “surges” or “spikes” in electrical current that may damage the RV’s electrical/electronic components.

SWAY—Fishtailing action of the trailer caused by external forces that set the trailer’s mass into a lateral (side-to-side) motion. The trailer’s wheels serve as the axis or pivot point. Also known as “yaw.”

THERMOCOUPLE—A thermocouple is a device that monitors the pilot flame of a pilot model propane appliance. If the pilot flame is extinguished the thermocouple causes the gas valve to shut off the flow of gas to both the pilot flame and the main burner.

TIP OUT—The term used for an area or room in an RV that tips out for additional living space. The Tip-Out was generally used in older RVs. Newer RVs mainly use a slide-out.

TIRE RATINGS—The MAXIMUM LOAD that a tire may carry is engraved on the sidewall, along with a corresponding COLD inflation pressure. A reduction in inflation pressure requires a reduction in load rating. Tire manufacturers publish charts that establish the load capacity at various inflation pressures.

TOE (WHEEL ALIGNMENT)—Toe is the measure of whether the front of the wheels (looking down from the top) are closer (toe-in) or farther (toe-out) than the back of the wheels.

TONGUE WEIGHT, TONGUE LOAD, VERTICAL LOAD (TWR/TLR/VLR)—Tongue Weight, Tongue Load, Vertical Load Rating Different terms for the MAXIMUM VERTICAL LOAD that can be carried by the hitch UNLOADED.
**Glossary**

**TRAILER BRAKES**—Brakes that are built into the trailer axle systems and are activated either by electric impulse or by a surge mechanism. The overwhelming majority of RVs utilize electric trailer brakes that are actuated when the tow vehicle's brakes are operated, or when a brake controller is manually activated. Surge brakes utilize a mechanism that is positioned at the coupler, that detects when the tow vehicle is slowing or stopping, and activates the trailer brakes via a hydraulic system (typically used on boats).

**TRAVEL TRAILER (TT)**—Also referred to as “conventional trailers,” these types of rigs have an A-frame and coupler and are attached to a ball mount on the tow vehicle. Travel trailers are available with one, two or three axles. Depending upon tow ratings, conventional trailers can be towed by trucks, cars or sport-utility vehicles.

**UMBILICAL CORD**—Wiring harness which connects the trailer to the tow vehicle during transport. The umbilical cord supplies the trailer with DC power for charging the batteries and operating DC equipment. It also operates the trailer brakes and signal lights. (Also referred to as the 7-way power cord.)

**UNDERBELLY**—The RV’s under-floor surface, which is protected by a weatherproofed material.

**UTQGL (UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADE LABELING)**—A program that is directed by the government to provide consumers with information about three characteristics of the tire: tread wear, traction and temperature. Following government prescribed test procedures, tire manufacturers perform their own evaluations for these characteristics. Each manufacturer then labels the tire, according to grade.

**UV DEGRADATION**—A breaking down of material due to the sun’s harsh ultraviolet rays.

**UNLOADED VEHICLE WEIGHT (UVW)**—The WEIGHT of a vehicle as built at the factory with full fuel, engine (generator) oil and coolants. It does not include cargo, fresh water, propane, occupants, or dealer installed accessories.

**WALLY WORLD**—Slang term used by RVers to describe a Wal-Mart.

**WASTE WATER TANKS**—The gray water tank holds the waste water from the sinks and showers. The black water tank holds the waste from the toilet.

**WATER PRESSURE REGULATOR**—Device (customer supplied) installed on the water hose attached to city water to limit the water pressure entering the RV. Most regulators limit water pressure to 40 psi.

**WEEKENDERS**—People who own their RV’s for weekend and vacation use.
WEIGHT & LOAD—These terms are generally used interchangeably. For the purposes of understanding RV applications:

- Vehicles have WEIGHT, which impart LOADS to tires, axles and hitches.
- Scale measurements taken when weighing, are LOADS carried by the tires. The measured LOADS are used to calculate Gross Combination Weight (GCW), Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross Axle Weight (GAW), and Hitch Loads.

WET WEIGHT—The weight of the vehicle with the fuel, freshwater and propane tanks full.

Note these important weights:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Weight per Gallon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>4.25 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>8.3 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline</td>
<td>6.3 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel fuel</td>
<td>6.6 lbs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WIDE BODY—An RV having an external body width greater than 96 inches (8 feet). The most common wide-body widths are 100” and 102.”

WINTERIZED—Refers to a camper that has been prepared for storage. The water systems have been drained and RV antifreeze has been added to protect the water lines and drains. The low point drains should be in the open position.

WORK CAMPER—A person living in an RV and working. Many spell it as “workamper” after the website and service by that name.

YAW—Fishtailing action of the trailer caused by external forces that set the trailer’s mass into a lateral (side-to-side) motion. The trailer’s wheels serve as the axis or pivot point. Also known as “sway.”
7-Way Wire Harness ........................................... 71
12-Volt DC System ........................................... 91
12-Volt Fuse Panel ........................................... 92
12-Volt Water Pump ......................................... 108
50-Amp Power Cord ......................................... 87-88
120-Volt AC System ........................................... 89
120-Volt Circuit Breakers ................................... 89

A
Air Quality ...................................................... 44-45
Appliances ....................................................... 143-144
Awnings ......................................................... 153, 154-155

B
Battery Disconnect Switch ................................... 94
Black/Grey Water Holding Tanks ......................... 115
Black/Grey Water Systems .................................. 114

C
Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning ......................... 37
CCC (Cargo Carrying Capacity) ......................... 54
Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing ....................... 46
Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm . 38-42
Condensation ................................................... 47-48
Converter ......................................................... 90

E
Electrical Load Ratings .................................. 95
Electronics ....................................................... 147
Emergency Egress Window ................................ 35
Emergency Weather Planning ............................ 32
Emptying the Black & Grey Water Tanks ............. 116
Exterior ............................................................. 184
Exterior Roof ..................................................... 187
Exterior Vent with Locking Damper ............... 145

F
Federal Certification Label ................................... 55
Fifth Wheel Pin Box Hitch ................................... 72
Fire Extinguisher ............................................... 34
Fire Safety ......................................................... 33
Formaldehyde .................................................... 46
Fresh Water System ......................................... 103
Fuel Station .................................................... 166-169
G
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) ........................................... 54
Generator ............................................................................ 98-101
GFCI Receptacle ..................................................................... 90
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) ........................................ 54
H
Heating & Cooling ............................................................... 150
Hide-A-Bed Sofa ................................................................. 176
Hitching Procedure .............................................................. 73
Hitch Weight / Tongue Weight ................................................. 54
Hydraulic System - Manual Override ....................................... 159, 196-198
I
Interior Care ........................................................................ 178
L
Leveling the RV ................................................................. 77-78
• Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System (G-Class) .................... 79-84
M
Maintenance Checklist, Suggested ........................................ 191
Maintenance Schedule, Required ........................................... 192-193
Maximum Load Rating ......................................................... 56, 66
Mini-EMS ........................................................................... 96
Monitor Panel ....................................................................... 104-105
O
Occupant Safety .................................................................. 31
P
Patio Deck ........................................................................... 171, 174-175
Pet Safety. ........................................................................... 31
Propane Leak Test. ............................................................ 137
Propane Regulator .............................................................. 139
Propane System. .................................................................. 135
R
Ramp Door ............................................................................ 170-171, 174-175
Roof .................................................................................... 187
Roof Ladder ......................................................................... 188
RV Braking System .............................................................. 70
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safety Precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanitizing the Fresh Water System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideout Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Electric (G-Class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hydraulic Through Frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Schwintek In-Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar Power Charging System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire and Loading Information Label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Safety/Tire Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Roof Antenna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unhitching from the Tow Vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Unhitching from a Tow Vehicle (G-Class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVW (Unloaded Vehicle Weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty, (1) One Year Limited Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty, (3) Three Year Limited Structural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Control System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pressure &amp; Temperature Relief Valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighing Your Tow Vehicle &amp; RV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel Nut Torque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winterizing / RV Storage Preparation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winterizing the Plumbing System</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Work Performed</th>
<th>Next Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>